

О. В. Афанасьева, И. В. Михеева



АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК


как второй иностранный

4-й год обучения



 ДРОФА

О. В. Афанасьева, И. В. Михеева

 | **Р**оссийский
учебник

АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК

как второй иностранный

4-й год обучения

Учебник

Рекомендовано
Министерством просвещения
Российской Федерации

7-е издание, исправленное

Москва

 **дрофа**

2019



Unit 1



Visiting the USA¹

3

Step One

Step One

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to this traditional English song and sing along, 🎧 (1).



One Man Went to Moor

1. One man went to moor²,
Went to moor on meadow³.
One man and his dog,
One man and his dog
Went to moor on meadow.
2. Two men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Two men, one man,
One man and his dog
Went to moor on meadow.
3. Three men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Three men, two men,
One man and his dog
Went to moor on meadow.



¹ (the) USA [ˌjuː es ˈeɪ] – the United States of America — Соединённые Штаты Америки

² a moor [mɔː] — вересковая пустошь

³ a meadow [ˈmeɪəʊ] — луг

4. Four men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Four men, three men, two men,
One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
5. Five men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Five men, four men, three men, two men,
One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
6. Six men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Six men, five men, four men, three men, two men,
One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
7. Seven men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Seven men, six men, five men, four men, three men,
two men,
One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
8. Eight men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Eight men, seven men, six men, five men, four men,
three men, two men,
One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
9. Nine men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Nine men, eight men, seven men, six men, five men,
four men, three men, two men,
One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.
10. Ten men went to moor,
Went to moor on meadow.
Ten men, nine men, eight men, seven men, six men,
five men, four men, three men, two men,
One man and his dog went to moor on meadow.

2 Complete the tag questions¹ and answer them.

- Example: You travelled a lot during your summer holidays, ...?
— You travelled a lot during your summer holidays, didn't you?
— Yes, I did. (No, I didn't. I stayed at home.)

¹ a tag question — a disjunctive question — разделительный вопрос

- 1) You didn't go anywhere, ...?
- 2) You stayed in your home town, ...?
- 3) The weather was terrible in the summer, ...?
- 4) It never rained in the summer, ...?
- 5) You often went boating, ...?
- 6) Nobody went with you, ...?
- 7) You didn't make sandcastles on the beach, ...?
- 8) You had a lot of fun, ...?
- 9) You couldn't go abroad, ...?
- 10) Your parents were with you during the summer, ...?
- 11) You weren't in the north of our country, ...?
- 12) You didn't go to the forest much, ...?
- 13) You saw a lot of interesting places, ...?
- 14) You didn't write a diary, ...?
- 15) You didn't invite anybody to visit you, ...?

3 You have just come back to school. Tell your friends a few words about your summer holidays. Follow the plan.

A. If you travelled


- Who did you travel with?
- How long did you stay there?
- What did you do in the morning and in the afternoon?
- Where did you go in the evening?
- Did you have fun?
- What are the places you visited famous for?
- Where are they situated?
- What souvenirs did you buy?
- Were your holidays interesting? Boring?

B. If you stayed in your home town

- When did you usually get up?
- What did you do in the morning?
- Did you go to the forest (river, mountains)?
- Who did you go there with?
- What did you do about the house?
- How much did you read?
- What games¹ did you play? Who did you do it with?
- Did you ride a bike?

¹ a game [geɪm] — игра

- What did you do in the evening?
- Did you write a diary?
- What films did you see?
- What museums did you visit?
- Who came to your place?
- Were your holidays interesting? Boring?

4 Listen,  (2), and choose the right item¹.



Dialogue A

- John went to the USA with
 - Yura
 - his family
 - his friends
- People call² New York
 - "the Big Apple"
 - "the Little Apple"
 - "the Apple"
- Yura would like to see New York's
 - streets
 - bridges
 - skyscrapers³
- John's going to Washington, D.C.
 - at the weekend
 - on Friday
 - on Monday
- John is going to send Yura a
 - letter
 - telegram
 - postcard

Dialogue B

- John ... it in New York.
 - likes
 - hates
 - doesn't like
- New Yorkers are
 - selfish
 - kind
 - friendly
- It's raining in
 - Moscow
 - New York
 - Washington, D.C.
- Yesterday's show was
 - not good
 - rather good
 - very good
- John'll ... from Washington, D.C.
 - write
 - go away
 - call

¹ an item ['aɪtəm] — пункт; *зд.*: вариант

² to call [kɔ:l] — называть

³ a skyscraper ['skaɪ,skreɪpə] — небоскрёб



Dialogue C

- 1) In Washington, D.C. John is staying ...
a) at a hotel b) with friends c) in an old castle
- 2) John is going to see Washington ...
a) in the morning b) in the afternoon c) in the evening
- 3) John and Sally are going to see ...
a) the White House and the Cathedral
b) the White House and the Potomac [pə'təʊmæk] River
c) the White House and the Capitol
- 4) Yura and Sally are going to the city centre with ...
a) their mother b) their father c) their cousins
- 5) Yura is going to get some of John's ...
a) CDs b) e-mails c) photos

7

Step One

- 5** John Barker and his family visited the USA in the summer. He knows a lot about America now. How much do you know about it? Say: true or false.



- 1) New York is the capital of the USA.
- 2) Russians came to America in the 18th century.
- 3) America is a country of immigrants.
- 4) Chicago [ʃi'kɑ:gəʊ] is situated in the south of the USA.
- 5) There are fifty states¹ in the USA.
- 6) There are fifty stars on the American flag.
- 7) All American states are situated in South America.
- 8) The United States is smaller than Russia.
- 9) The Mississippi is the longest river in the world.
- 10) There are no high mountains in the USA.
- 11) California is a US city.
- 12) Texas ['teksəs] is the biggest state of the USA.

¹ a state [steɪt] — иштат

6 Listen, (3), and repeat.



continent ['kɒntɪnənt]: Africa is a continent. South America and North America are continents too.

Europe ['jʊərəp]: Italy, Finland, Spain are situated in Europe.

Asia ['eɪʃə]: Russia is situated in Europe and Asia.

Australia [ə'streɪliə]: Australia is a country and a continent.

nationality [nə'æʃənəlɪti]: I am Russian. It is my nationality. John is English. It is his nationality.

historic [hɪ'stɔrɪk]: Red Square is a historic place.

Germany ['dʒɜ:məni]: Germany is situated in Europe.

Ireland ['aɪələnd]: Ireland is to the west of Great Britain.

7 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (4), and repeat.

A.

bring [brɪŋ] — приносить, приводить

build [bɪld] — строить

moon [mu:n] — луна

only ['ɒnli] — 1) *adv* только;

2) *adj* единственный

proud [praʊd] — гордый

skyscraper ['skaɪ,skreɪpə] — небоскрёб

state [steɪt] — 1) штат; 2) государство

remember [rɪ'membə] — помнить

same [seɪm] — такой же

wild [waɪld] — дикий

B.

bring (brought [brɔ:t]): John brought me a cup of tea. Summer brings warmer weather. We are going to have a party, come and bring your friends. Bring back my book, please.

build (built [bilt]): What is grandpa building? When did they build the new road near your farm? — They built it last year.

building: Houses, schools, shops, hotels are buildings.

the moon: the sun and the moon, on the moon. Can you see the moon in the sky?

only: 1) Only Fred can help me. I know only one foreign language. 2) an only child, an only friend. Benny is an only child in the family.

proud: a proud man, a proud woman, proud people. He was too proud to go back to his parents' home.

be proud of: Susan is proud of her parents. Alex says he is proud of his job.

skyscraper: Skyscrapers are very high buildings. There are many skyscrapers in New York.

state: 1) How many states are there in the USA? Which is the biggest state? 2) France is a state in Europe.

remember: I never remember when she was born. Do you remember her address? Did you remember to buy bread?

same: the same clothes, the same answer. It's the same old story, I don't want to hear it again.

at the same time: 1) I can't understand what you are saying if you all talk at the same time. 2) Moscow is a very old city. At the same time it is young and modern.

wild: a wild animal, a wild flower. What wild animals do you know?

8 Match the words in the two columns.

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1) to be proud of | a) the moon |
| 2) to build | b) the country |
| 3) to bring | c) the question |
| 4) to walk on | d) a bridge |
| 5) to remember | e) a cup of tea |

9 Complete the sentences. Use the words from the box.

high, historic, only, proud, same, wild

- 1) Ben has no brothers or sisters in the family. He is an ... child.
- 2) Mrs Davidson is ... of her children. They are so talented.
- 3) There are so many ... buildings in New York.



- 4) I am ... to say that John is one of the first pupils in our class.
- 5) The Kremlin is a ... place in Moscow.
- 6) You can see a lot of ... animals in the zoo.
- 7) We can buy this computer I think. The ... problem is — we haven't got so much money.
- 8) We are staying at the ... hotel as you.
- 9) It's the ... film that they showed last year.
- 10) Have you got any ... flowers in your garden?
- 11) Are there many ... monuments in St Petersburg?

10 A. Read the text and match the titles¹ with the paragraphs. There is one extra title.

1. Country of Immigrants
2. New Home for English-Speaking People
3. The Old and the New Hand-in-Hand
4. American Traditions

The New World

a) The United States is a young country. It is only a few hundred years old. Millions of people from other countries and continents — Europe, Asia, Africa, Australia and South America — find their new home in the United States.

b) The people of the United States are of many different nationalities. These different people brought to the new home their traditions, holidays and festivals. From Germany they brought Christmas trees. From Ireland they brought St Patrick's Day celebrations. From Scotland they brought Halloween. Americans celebrate the festivals of the Old World. But there are new American festivals and traditions too.

c) Americans like new ideas. They built the first skyscrapers and they put the first man on the Moon. They like to be modern. They enjoy big modern cities, new houses and new cars. At the same time Americans love old things. They like to visit historic houses and museums. They remember their country's history and the days of the "Wild West". Most of them are very proud of their country and love it.

B. Listen,  (5), and read the text again after it.

¹ a title ['taɪtl] — название, заголовок



11 Answer the questions.

- 1) What is the New World?
- 2) Why is the USA a country of immigrants?
- 3) What continents do immigrants come to the USA from?
- 4) What do immigrants bring with them?
- 5) Do Americans celebrate only new holidays and festivals?
- 6) Who put the first man on the Moon?
- 7) Are many Americans patriots? Why do you think so?

12 Speak about the people of the USA. Use exercises 10 and 11.**Do It on Your Own****13** Write what they are.

1. ___ 2. ___ 3. ___ 4. ___ 5. ___ 6. ___ 7. ___ 8. ___ 9. ___

14 Write the English for:

историческое здание, пятьдесят штатов, вернуть тетрадь, построить мост, высокие небоскрёбы, полевые цветы, мой единственный друг, тот же ответ, гордиться этой страной, луна и звёзды, помнить российскую историю, самое большое государство.

Do It Together

1 A. Listen to the text "The Big Apple", (6), and say which of the sentences are true.

1. a) All jazz musicians wanted to work in Washington, D.C.
b) All jazz musicians wanted to work in New York.
2. a) They called New York "The Big Apple" because it was the best city to work in.
b) They called New York "The Big Apple" because it was the biggest city in the USA.
3. a) More than twelve million people come to visit New York every year.
b) More than twenty million people come to visit New York every year.
4. a) The name of New York's park is Central Park.
b) The name of New York's park is Quiet Park.
5. a) New York has no beaches.
b) New York has a lot of beaches.
6. a) Broadway is famous for its shows.
b) Broadway is famous because it's five kilometres long.

B. Say what information about New York the text gives. What else do you know about this city?

2 Match the items in the columns.

- | | |
|----------------------|---|
| 1) Texas | a) The continent where Italy, Spain, France and Germany are situated. |
| 2) California | b) The capital of the USA. |
| 3) The Potomac River | c) The American state where Hollywood is situated. |
| 4) Europe | d) One of the biggest states in the USA in the south of the country. |
| 5) New York | e) The name of the continent and at the same time of the country. |
| 6) Washington, D.C. | f) The country which has got fifty states. |
| 7) Australia | g) The city people call "the Big Apple". |
| 8) The Mississippi | h) The longest river of the USA. |
| 9) The USA | i) The river which Washington, D.C. is situated on. |
| 10) The New World | j) North, Central and South America. |



3 Complete these sentences.

A.

- 1) I remember the day when
- 2) I remember the place where
- 3) I remember the song which
- 4) I remember the man who
- 5) I remember the time when
- 6) I remember the book which

B.

- 1) I am proud of
- 2) My parents are proud of
- 3) My friend is proud of
- 4) My teacher is proud of
- 5) We are proud of

4 Answer the questions.

- 1) How many states are there in the USA?
- 2) What continent is the USA situated on?
- 3) People of many nationalities live in the States, don't they?
- 4) Which American cities can you see a lot of tall buildings in?
- 5) What do people usually call the tall buildings of New York and Chicago?
- 6) What names of American cities and states do you remember?
- 7) Is Washington and Washington, D.C. the same place (thing)?
- 8) What are Americans proud of?
- 9) What tradition did they bring from Germany?
- 10) What celebration did they bring from Scotland?
- 11) What holiday did they bring from Ireland?

5 Say what they built in the city of Norton and when.

Example: They built a bridge in the city of Norton in 1840 (eighteen forty).



1840



2000



1978



1754



2001



1872



1995



1968



1981



1954



1986



1920



1952



1833

6 Listen, (7), repeat the names and find these places on the map.



15

Step Two



- 1) the United States of America
- 2) Canada ['kænədə]
- 3) Mexico ['meksikəʊ]
- 4) the Pacific Ocean [pə'sɪfɪk 'əʊʃn] (the Pacific)
- 5) the Atlantic Ocean [ət'læntɪk 'əʊʃn] (the Atlantic)
- 6) Alaska [ə'læskə]
- 7) Hawaii [hə'waɪ]
- 8) the Rocky Mountains [ˌrɒki 'maʊntɪnz]
- 9) the Appalachian [ˌæpə'leɪʃjən] Mountains (the Appalachians)
- 10) the Grand Canyon [ˌgrænd 'kænjən]
- 11) the Great Plains
- 12) Death Valley [ˌdeθ 'væli]
- 13) the Mississippi River (the Mississippi)
- 14) the Colorado [ˌkɒlə'reɪdəʊ] River (the Colorado)
- 15) the Great Lakes

7 Say what they are.

Example: California is a state.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1) the Pacific | 7) the Colorado |
| 2) Canada | 8) Alaska |
| 3) the Appalachians | 9) Hawaii |
| 4) Mexico | 10) the Atlantic |
| 5) the Mississippi | 11) the USA |
| 6) the Ontario | 12) the Huron |

8 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (8), and repeat.

A.

border (on) ['bɔ:də] — грани-
чить (с)

chain [tʃeɪn] — цепь

coast [kəʊst] — побережье

deep [di:p] — глубокий

flow [fləʊ] — течь

island ['aɪlənd] — остров

large [la:dʒ] — большой

lie [laɪ] — лежать

mighty ['maɪti] — могущест-
венный, могучий

part [pɑ:t] — часть

plain [pleɪn] — равнина

stretch [stretʃ] — тянуться,
простирается

valley ['vælɪ] — долина

B.

border: to border on sth. What countries does Russia border on? The USA borders on Canada in the north.

chain: a golden chain, a chain of mountains. That day Anne had a beautiful chain round her neck. The Urals are a chain of mountains situated in Europe and Asia.

coast: the Atlantic coast, on the coast. My town is situated on the coast.

deep: a deep river, a deep lake. My younger brother is afraid to swim in deep water. How deep is this canyon?

flow: to flow west, to flow north, to flow into the ocean. The Volga flows into the Caspian Sea. The Colorado flows south.

island: an island in the ocean, a chain of islands. What islands are situated to the east of Russia? I can take you to the island in a boat.

large: a large city, a large family. We stayed in a large hotel on the sea coast.

lie (lay [leɪ]): to lie on the sofa, to lie on the river. He lay down on the floor. The farm lay three kilometres from the sea.



mighty: a mighty river, a mighty king. The Mississippi is a mighty river in the US. We hope that Russia will always be a mighty country.

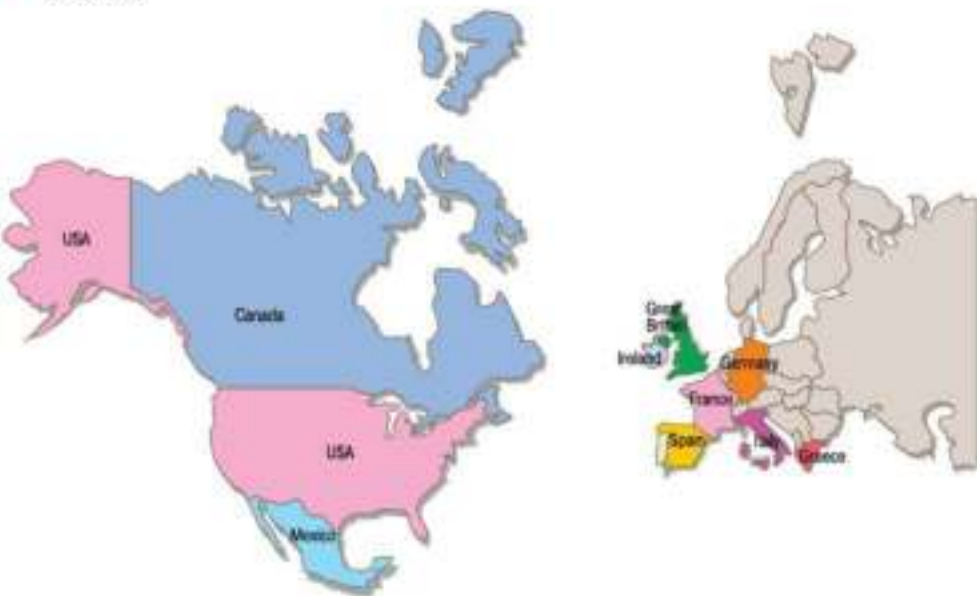
part: a part of the country, four large parts, part of the time. Great Britain has four parts, or four countries. This is the most beautiful part of the garden.

plain: a low plain, the Great Plains of the US. The Great Plains are situated in the western central part of the country.

stretch: to stretch far, to stretch west, to stretch north. The forest stretched as far as the eye could see. Russia stretches from the Pacific Ocean to the Baltic Sea.

valley: a green valley, a deep valley, lily of the valley (lilies of the valley). There is a river flowing in the valley. Valleys are usually situated in the mountains.

- 9 A. Look at the map and say what countries: a) the USA, b) Canada borders on.



B. Answer the questions.

- 1) Germany borders on France, doesn't it?
- 2) France borders on Spain, doesn't it?
- 3) Spain doesn't border on Italy, does it?
- 4) Germany borders on Greece, doesn't it?
- 5) Greece doesn't border on Italy, does it?

C. Say:

- 1) what country Russia borders on in the north-west
- 2) what country Great Britain borders on in the west
- 3) what country Spain borders on in the north
- 4) what country Germany borders on in the south-west
- 5) what country the USA borders on in the south

10 Use the new words from the box and complete the sentences.

chain, islands, lies, large, largest, flows,
parts, stretching, lily of the valley, deep, deepest,
coast, plains

1) The ... is a beautiful spring flower. 2) There are a lot of ... in the Pacific Ocean. 3) The Baikal is the ... lake in the world. 4) Masha spent her holidays on the Black Sea 5) Moscow is a very ... city. 6) The Mississippi is a ... river, it is the ... river in the USA. 7) The Mississippi ... south. 8) The Urals is a famous ... of mountains. 9) Is the Volga a ... river? 10) There are four ... in Great Britain. They are England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. 11) Are there any ... in Europe? 12) Washington, D.C. ... on the Potomac River. 13) The forest was ... to the east.

11 Match them.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1) The Great Lakes 2) Texas 3) The Colorado 4) Washington 5) Washington, D.C. 6) Florida 7) The Appalachians 8) The Rocky Mountains | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a) stretch in the east b) lie in the north of the USA c) borders on Mexico in the south like Arizona and New Mexico d) is the capital of the USA e) stretch along¹ the coast f) is a state in the north-west g) flows south h) lies in the south of the USA |
|--|---|

¹ along [ə'loŋ] — вдоль



В английском языке есть два похожих слова **other** и **another**, которые следует различать.

Another означает 1) «другой», «ещё один», «дополнительный» (I'd like *another* cup of tea, please.) и 2) «другой», «иной» (Give me *another* cup of tea, please. I don't like this one.). Местоимение **another** используется только с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе: another day, another place, another man.

Other означает 1) «другие», «дополнительные» (You are my good friend. I have no *other* friends.) и 2) «другие», «иные» (Let's go to the zoo or do you have *other* plans?). Слово *other* обычно используется с исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе: other pupils, other places, other traditions. Сочетание **other + существительное** в речи часто заменяется словом **others**. Например, I'd like to meet other teachers too. = I'd like to meet *others* too.

12 Complete the sentences. Use *another*, *other*, *others*.

1) I can't talk to you now. Come ... day, please. 2) I have just one sandwich. May I have ... one? 3) This is a very bad road. Are there ... roads to the castle? 4) Some people like fish and ... don't. 5) There is ... big river in this part of Scotland. 6) Are there any ... mountains in Wales? 7) I can carry this big bag and some ... too. 8) Tomorrow will be ... sunny day. 9) We are going to visit France and some ... countries too. 10) If you like these postcards, I can bring you some 11) Where are my ... exercise books? I can't find them. 12) Some people travel by train, ... like travelling by car. 13) "Tom Sawyer" is a book about a young boy. ... book about a boy is "Oliver Twist". 14) After going to New York I'd like to see some ... towns in the USA.

Do It on Your Own

13 Ask for more things. Use the words from the box.

box, bag, cup, carton¹, jug, plate

- 1) Can I have another ... of coffee?
- 2) Can we ask for another ... of milk?

¹ a carton ['kɑ:tn] — пакет (картонная упаковка для продуктов)

- 3) Have you got another ... of sugar?
- 4) May I have another ... of chalk, please?
- 5) I'd like to buy another ... of pears.
- 6) Will you give me another ... of orange juice?
- 7) I'd like another ... of ham and eggs, please.
- 8) Could I have another ... of chocolates?
- 9) Could you give me another ... of tea?
- 10) Have you got another ... of pencils?

14 See how well you know geography of the USA. Give it a name.

- 1) Five big lakes in the north of the USA.
- 2) The largest city in the USA.
- 3) The biggest river of the USA.
- 4) The chain of mountains in the east of the USA.
- 5) The chain of mountains in the west of the USA.
- 6) The biggest state of the USA.
- 7) The capital of the USA.
- 8) The plains which are situated in the central part of the USA.

Step Three

Do It Together

1 Listen, (9), and say what places in the USA they visited.



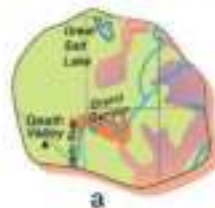
1. Robert



3. Jim



2. Fred



a



b



c



2 Say what can be *deep, large, mighty*.

- 1) (a) deep forest, ..., ..., ..., ..., ...
- 2) (a) large continent, ..., ..., ..., ..., ...
- 3) (a) mighty queen, ..., ..., ...

3 Match the pictures with the words and word combinations.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| a) a golden chain | e) a deep valley |
| b) a lily of the valley | f) a plain |
| c) a part of the apple | g) a chain of mountains |
| d) the Atlantic coast | |



1.



3.



6.



2.



4.



5.



7.

4 Complete the sentences with the missing words.

lie, lies, flow, flows, flowed, stretch, stretched

- 1) Washington, D.C. ... on the Potomac River.
- 2) The Great Plains ... to the east of the Rocky Mountains.
- 3) The Volga ... from the Valdai Hills to the Caspian Sea.
- 4) The road ... ahead for miles.
- 5) Did the river ... into the sea? — No, it didn't. It ... into the lake.
- 6) Kazan and Samara ... on the Volga.

- 5 A. Read the text and say what information about American geography you knew/didn't know before you read the text.

The United States of America

The United States of America is the world's fourth largest country. Only Russia, Canada and China have bigger territories [teritōriz] than the US. There are fifty states in the country. Forty-eight are in the same part of North America. The other two are Alaska in the north, and Hawaii situated on eight islands in the Pacific.

The United States stretches from the Pacific Ocean to the Atlantic Ocean, which wash the country in the west and in the east. Long mountain chains run down the Pacific coast. Death Valley, the lowest place in North and South Americas, is in this part of the country. The Grand Canyon, which the Colorado River made millions of years ago, is here, too. In some places it is about 6 km deep. Farther east the tall peaks of the Rocky Mountains lie and run from Canada to Mexico. Beyond them the Great Plains, where the mighty Mississippi River flows, stretch. Another mountain chain, the Appalachians, runs down the eastern part of the United States. The USA borders on Canada in the north, where the five Great Lakes are situated, and Mexico in the south.

- B. Listen,  (10), and read the text again after it.



6 Match the two columns.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1) The USA | a) the American state situated on the islands. |
| 2) Alaska | b) the chain of mountains in the east of the USA. |
| 3) Hawaii | c) the ocean that washes the USA in the east. |
| 4) The Pacific Ocean | d) a very deep crack in the ground ¹ . |
| 5) The Atlantic Ocean | e) the country that borders on the US in the north. |
| 6) Death Valley | f) the fourth largest country in the world. |
| 7) The Grand Canyon | g) a mighty river that flows through the Great Plains. |
| 8) The Mississippi | h) the lowest place in North America. |
| 9) The Rocky Mountains | i) the American state situated in the far north. |
| 10) The Appalachian Mountains | j) the ocean that washes the USA in the west. |
| 11) Canada | k) the chain of mountains in the west of the USA. |
| 12) Mexico | l) the country that borders on the US in the south. |



Focus

The Present Perfect Tense (Настоящее совершённое время)

1. Описать событие, о котором известно, когда оно произошло, можно, используя знакомое вам время *past simple*.

I washed the dishes an hour ago.

Если же неизвестно или неважно, когда совершено какое-либо действие, а важен его результат, который связан с моментом речи/с настоящим, используется время *present perfect* ['rɜ:fikt].

¹ a crack in the ground [graʊnd] — разлом земной коры

Действие: Результат:
 Я вымыла посуду. → Посуда вымыта, она чистая.
 (Когда — неизвестно, неважно.)
 Джон разбил вазу. → Ваза разбита.
 (Вазы нет, есть только осколки.)

2. **Present perfect** образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола *have/has* и третьей формы основного глагола (V_3):

have/has + V₃

Для правильных глаголов форма V_3 совпадает с формой прошедшего времени.

I	II	III
answer	answered	answered
cook	cooked	cooked
visit	visited	visited
finish	finished	finished

I **have answered** the question. — Я ответил на вопрос. (Результат: мой ответ известен.)

Mum **has cooked** supper. — Мама приготовила ужин. (Результат: ужин готов.)

John **has visited** the USA. — Джон посетил США. (Результат: у Джона есть представление об этой стране.)

We **have finished** the work. — Мы закончили работу. (Результат: работа завершена.)

3. У неправильных глаголов форму V_3 нужно запомнить. Вы найдёте её в таблице неправильных глаголов. Для начала запомните формы глаголов *to see* и *to be*.

I	II	III
see	saw	seen
be	was/were	been

Nick **has seen** a lot of French films.

We **have been to** Australia. We like it.

Обратите внимание на то, что с глаголом *to be* в этом времени часто употребляется предлог *to*.

I have been **to** Moscow. — Я бывал **в** Москве.

She has been **to** London. — Она бывала **в** Лондоне.

7 Make up sentences.

I
We
My friend
Jane
They
These people
You and I

have
has

played football before.
seen all the new films.
visited the best museums of the town.
cleaned the classroom.
been to the city centre.
watched the news on TV.
asked a lot of questions.
cooked a very good dinner.
finished the work.
decided to have a holiday.
started to write a diary.
listened to some very good songs.

25

Step Three

8 Say what has happened.

Example: Sam. His shoes are clean. (clean)
Sam has cleaned his shoes.

- 1) James. His car is clean.
(wash)
- 2) Kate. Her plants look green and fresh¹.
(water)
- 3) Mum and dad. Their bedroom window is open.
(open)
- 4) The children. They are not doing their homework.
They are playing in the garden.
(finish)
- 5) Mary. She knows what the film is about.
(see)
- 6) My friends. They know what the British Museum is like.
(visit)
- 7) Emma. Her hands are clean.
(wash)
- 8) The Smiths. They know where they'll spend their weekend.
(decide)
- 9) Margo. There is a lot of food in her fridge.
(be to the shops)
- 10) Jake. His supper is ready.
(cook)

¹ fresh [fref] — свежий

9 Today Cinderella is very tired. Can you say why?

E x a m p l e: 1. She has washed her sisters' clothes.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.

- 1) wash, 2) carry, 3) clean, 4) cook, 5) clean, 6) work, 7) wash,
- 8) wash, 9) be, 10) water, 11) walk, 12) paint



- 10** Say what places they have been to (seen, visited) and what places they are going to see.

Example: 1) Ted — New York — Washington, D.C.

Ted has been to New York. He is going to visit Washington, D.C.

2) Roy and Alice — France — Germany

Roy and Alice have been to France. They are going to see Germany.

3) John — California — Washington

4) Billy and Beth — Canada — Mexico

5) Harry — the Appalachians — the Rocky Mountains

6) The Moles — the Mississippi — the Colorado

7) Miss Robertson — Alaska — Hawaii

8) Ann — Florida — the Great Plains

9) The friends — the Atlantic Ocean — the Pacific Ocean

10) Kitty and David — South America — North America

11) My cousins — the Pacific coast — the Atlantic coast

Do It on Your Own

- 11** Complete the sentences.

1) Julia (has/have) visited the Grand Canyon. 2) Ed and his sister (has/have) travelled about the Atlantic coast. 3) My cousins (has/have) seen "The Big Apple". 4) John (has/have) played five games of tennis. 5) The Richardsons (has/have) been to the Great

Lakes. 6) Alice (has/have) listened to the song "America, the Beautiful". She likes it. 7) Boris (has/have) walked in Central Park of New York. Now he knows what it is like. 8) Kim's parents (has/have) been to the Rocky Mountains. 9) We (has/have) seen the Appalachians. They are great. 10) You (has/have) washed your hands. You may sit down to table.

12 Fill in the gaps with the missing information.

The States

1) The ... is the fourth largest country in the world stretching from the ... Ocean in the east to the ... in the west. 2) It is situated in ... America. 3) It borders on ... in the north and on ... in the south. 4) There are a lot of mountains in the USA. The highest and largest are the ... in the west. 5) The ... are in the east, they are lower and older. 6) The mighty ... is the longest river in the USA. Some other rivers flow into it. 7) The ... Lakes in the north of the USA are very deep. The ... Lake is the largest and the ... Lake is the smallest. 8) ... is the capital of the USA. It is situated on the ... River.

Step Four

Do It Together

1 Listen to the song, (11), and sing along.

Billy Boy

Oh, where have you been,
Billy Boy, Billy Boy,
Oh, where have you been,
Charming Billy?

I have been to seek a wife,
She's the joy of my life,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.

Очаровашка
Билли
искать
молоденькая



Did she ask you to come in,
Billy Boy, Billy Boy,
Did she ask you to come in,
Charming Billy?
Yes, she asked me to come in,
There's a dimple in her chin,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.

ямочка
на подбородке

29

Step Four

Can she bake a cherry pie,
Billy Boy, Billy Boy,
Can she bake a cherry pie,
Charming Billy?
She can bake a cherry pie,
Quick as you can wink an eye,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.

печь, испечь
вишнёвый пи-
рог

моргать

Can she make a feather [ˈfeðə] bed,
Billy Boy, Billy Boy,
Can she make a feather bed,
Charming Billy?
She can make a feather bed,
While standing on her head,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.


перо; перьевая

стоя на голове

How tall is she, Billy Boy, Billy Boy,
How tall is she, Charming Billy?
She is tall as any pine,
And as straight as a pumpkin vine,
She's a young thing
And cannot leave her mother.

сосна
плеть тыквы

How old is she, Billy Boy, Billy Boy,
 How old is she, Charming Billy?
 She is sixty times eleven,
 Twenty-eight and forty-seven,
 She's a young thing
 And cannot leave her mother.

- 2 A.** Say under what categories these words match and where you must use the article "the". Listen,  (12), and check.

...? ... Mexico
 ...? ... Alaska
 ...? ... Washington, D.C.
 ...? ... Hawaii
 ...? ... Atlantic
 ...? ... USA
 ...? ... Texas
 ...? ... Asia
 ...? ... Grand Canyon
 ...? ... Death Valley
 ...? ... Rockies
 ...? ... Pacific
 ...? ... Great Plains
 ...? ... New York
 ...? ... California
 ...? ... Superior
 ...? ... Mississippi
 ...? ... Canada
 ...? ... Washington
 ...? ... Appalachians
 ...? ... Ontario
 ...? ... Huron
 ...? ... Big Apple
 ...? ... Potomac

Continents: _____
 Oceans: _____
 Countries: _____
 States: _____
 Cities: _____
 Lakes: _____
 Rivers: _____
 Mountain chains: _____
 Others: _____

B. Say what you know about these places.

- 3** Say where you have been in your country and abroad.

Example: I have been to Kiev. We have been to Tarasovka.



4 Look at the pictures and say what games the children have finished playing.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.

5 Say what has happened.

Example: Nick has opened the window.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.

6 Say how we can form negations¹ in *present perfect*.

I have been to London.
We have been to Washington.
You have been to Boston.
They have been to Chicago.

She has been to the Great Lakes.
He has been to the USA.

I **have not been** to Moscow.
We **have not been** to Oxford.
You **have not been** to Leeds.
They **have not been** to New York.

She **has not been** to Miami.
He **has not been** to Spain.

I **haven't seen** the Pacific.
We **haven't seen** the Atlantic.
They **haven't seen** the Ontario.

She **hasn't seen** the Potomac.
He **hasn't seen** the Colorado.
You **haven't seen** the Huron.

7 Say what these people have not done.

Example: Max's boots are dirty. (clean)

Max hasn't (has not) cleaned his boots.

- 1) Mr Porter's work is not ready. (finish)
- 2) Julia doesn't know what New York is like. (be)
- 3) Mrs Johnson's plants are dry. (water)
- 4) I don't know if Peter is at school today. (see)
- 5) The paint on the walls in Paul's kitchen is old and dark. (paint)
- 6) Polly's cups and plates are unwashed. (wash)
- 7) Jerry hasn't seen the news on television today. (watch)
- 8) Mary and I are thinking about what film to see. (decide)
- 9) Most of us don't know how to play baseball. (play)
- 10) Jim doesn't know what the job of a journalist is like. (work as)
- 11) I'd like to know if the "Star" is a good hotel. (stay)
- 12) Samantha [sə'mɑ:nθə] can't teach you to make chocolate pudding. (cook)
- 13) My son wants to read "Hamlet", one of the most famous plays written by W. Shakespeare. (read)

¹ **negation** [nɪ'geɪʃn] — отрицание



Have I asked you for your address?

Yes, you have.

No, you haven't.



Have you washed your hands?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.



Have we seen this film?

Yes, we have.

No, we haven't.





Have the Greens
visited Red Square?

Yes, they have.



Have the boys
closed the window?

No,
they haven't.



Has Bob been
to New York?

Yes, he has.



Has Helen been
to Moscow?

No, she hasn't.



No,
we haven't.

9 Answer these questions.

- 1) Have you been to Moscow?
- 2) Have you seen Red Square?
- 3) Have you travelled a lot this year?
- 4) Has your father visited the USA?
- 5) Has your mother cooked pizza?
- 6) Have you played baseball?
- 7) Have your friends played tennis?
- 8) Have you helped your parents a lot this year?
- 9) Have you seen any of the Harry Potter films?
- 10) Have you asked your parents "difficult" questions?



Focus

Запомните три формы следующих неправильных глаголов.

I	II	III
do	did	done [dʌn]
begin	began	begun [brɪ'ɡʌn]
ring	rang	rung [rʌŋ]
run	ran	run [rʌn]
swim	swam	swum [swʌm]
come	came	come [kʌm]
become	became	become [brɪ'kʌm]

- 10 Ann helps Mrs Hicks about the house. She does everything Mrs Hicks asks her to do very quickly¹. Complete their dialogues.

A.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, ring up the post office about the letter, please.

Ann (*in several minutes*): I have done it, Mrs Hicks. I have rung the post-office. They know about the letter.

B.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, do my bedroom, please.

Ann (*in half an hour*): Mrs Hicks, I Your bedroom is clean.

¹ quickly ['kwɪkli] — быстро

C.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, begin cooking lunch, please.

Ann: I..., Mrs Hicks. I am making some chicken soup now.

D.

Mrs Hicks: Ann, go shopping but come back quickly.

Ann (in 40 minutes): I... back from the shop, Mrs Hicks. Now we've got all the vegetables you wanted.

11 Elizabeth Foster has six children. Say what their jobs are.

Example: Eliza has become a doctor.



12 Say how many a) kilometres they have run, b) metres they have swum.

Example: a) Boris — 10. Boris has run ten kilometres.

b) Helen — 25. Helen has swum twenty-five metres.

- | | |
|------------|----------------|
| a) Bob — 2 | b) Emma — 50 |
| Frank — 4 | Jane — 100 |
| Sarah — 1 | Samantha — 150 |
| Andy — 5 | Toby — 200 |
| Tracy — 3 | Mark — 125 |

Do It on Your Own

13 Complete the sentences. Use *present perfect*.

- 1) Mrs Johnson (become) a writer. 2) Bob and Charles (be) to the States many times. 3) You (swim) in the Pacific? 4) We (not, do) our lessons. 5) Why you (not, help) your friend? 6) The girls

(jump) high. Their results are very good. But they (run) 5 kilometres badly. 7) Betty (begin) learning English. 8) Polly (ring up) Doctor Gordon? 9) Boris (come) back? — No, he hasn't. He never comes back earlier than six. 10) Jane says she (not, see) any of the Harry Potter films.

14 Here are some answers. What are the questions? Use *present perfect*.

- 1) ...? — Yes, I have. I rang up granny in the morning.
- 2) ...? — Yes, he has. He came home at 6.
- 3) ...? — Yes, they have. They did their homework in the afternoon.
- 4) ...? — Yes, we have. We swam in the lake in summer.
- 5) ...? — Yes, she has. She began learning English when she was eight.
- 6) ...? — Yes, I have. I became a teacher long ago.
- 7) ...? — Yes, they have. They visited the British Museum when they were in London.
- 8) ...? — Yes, she has. She cooked the chicken after work.
- 9) ...? — Yes, he has. He saw this film some time ago.
- 10) ...? — Yes, we have. We were in Vladimir last summer.

Step Five

Do It Together

1 Listen,  (13), and say where Captain Drake has been or hasn't been to.

Asia? India? China? Australia? Sydney? North America? South America? Brazil? Venezuela?

2 Say why they are happy. Use *present perfect*.

- 1) James is happy because he (do) his homework and can go to the cinema with his friends.
- 2) Peter is happy because he (swim) 100 metres in two minutes.
- 3) Samantha and Jenny are happy because the bell (ring). There are no more classes and they can go home.
- 4) Tom and Roy are happy because they (see) a film with their favourite actor, Jackie Chan.



- 5) Pauline is happy because her mum (come) home early today and they are having dinner together.
- 6) Jack is happy because he (become) captain of his football team¹.
- 7) Mary and Kate (be) to New York. Now they know a lot about this city.
- 8) Anna is happy because she (begin) learning French.
- 9) Peter is happy because he (arrive) at school on time. He is usually late.
- 10) Julia is happy because she (play) her favourite sonata on the piano very well.



Focus

Present perfect часто используется с наречиями **already** [ɔ:l'redi] (уже), **ever** (когда-нибудь), **just** (только что), **never** (никогда), **yet** (ещё), которые служат своеобразными указателями этого времени и в предложении обычно стоят между вспомогательным и основным глаголами. **Yet** может употребляться и в конце предложения.

I have already done it. — Я это уже сделал.

He has just come. — Он только что пришёл.

They have never seen her. — Они её никогда не видели.

We haven't visited Mexico yet. — Мы ещё не посетили Мексику.



Have you ever been to the USA? — Вы когда-нибудь бывали в США?

¹ a team [ti:m] — команда

- 3 Mr Morgan lives in Spain. He has never been to South or North America but he has travelled a lot in Europe. Work in pairs, ask Mr Morgan questions and answer these questions for him.

Mexico, Death Valley, Covent Garden, Trafalgar Square, the Tretyakov Gallery, the Hermitage, Milan, the Grand Canyon, Washington, D.C., the Great Lakes, Buckingham Palace, the Rocky Mountains, the Seine

- Example: — Have you ever been to Seattle?
 — No, I haven't. I have never been to Seattle.
 — Have you ever seen the Louvre?
 — Yes, I have. I have just come from Paris.



Focus

Запомните три формы следующих неправильных глаголов.

I	II	III
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]
write	wrote	written
speak	spoke	spoken
take	took	taken
eat	ate [et]	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

4 Mary loves travelling. Look at the map and say where she has been or hasn't been to in the USA.



41

Step Five

5 Ask and answer the questions.

- 1) Have you ever written a letter abroad?
- 2) Have you ever read books by English writers?
- 3) Have you ever spoken to English people or Americans?
- 4) Have you ever eaten traditional English or American food?
- 5) Have you ever fallen in love¹ with a town or a city in Russia or abroad?
- 6) Have you ever taken photos of interesting or unusual buildings and monuments?
- 7) Have you ever given your friends pictures as a souvenir?
- 8) Have you ever been abroad?
- 9) Have you ever done foreign towns and cities?
- 10) Which of these things would you like to do?

6 A. Learn to form special questions in *present perfect*.

- Where have you been?
- What have we done?
- How many books have they read?
- How much porridge has the dog eaten?
- How well have they learnt the poem?
- Whose pen have I taken?
- Why has he come?
- Who(m) has she seen?

¹ to fall in love — влюбиться

B. Complete the dialogues and act them out.

- 1) — Have you been to the US?
 — Yes,
 — What cities ... ?
 — I have visited Washington, D.C. and some small towns on the Atlantic coast.
- 2) — Have you read any of the Harry Potter books?
 — Yes,
 — How many books ... ?
 — I have read three books.
 — What books ... ?
 — ... "Harry Potter and the Philosopher's [fɪ'lɒsəfəz] Stone".
 ("Harry Potter and the Chamber [tʃeɪmbə] of Secrets", "Harry Potter and the Prisoner [ˈprɪzənə] of Azkaban", "Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire", "Harry Potter and the Half-Blood [hɑ:f'blʌd] Prince".)
- 3) — Has Frank taken any pictures?
 — Yes,
 — How many pictures of the school building has he ... ?
 — ..., I think.
- 4) — Has Harrison spoken to Robert?
 — Yes, I think he
 — Has he given him the photos?
 — Yes,
 — What photos ... ?
 — I don't know.

7 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.**A.**

- Example: — Who has been to the cinema?
 — Mr Hopper has.



Mr Hopper



Mr Blake

1) Who has written the letter?



Emma

2) Who has read the book?



the girls

4) Who has played the piano?



Lizzy

5) Who has given Rex the bone?



Mrs Gordon and Polly

3) Who has taken the umbrellas with them?



Mr Ford

6) Who has spoken to the people in the hall?



Sally and Terry

7) Who has eaten all the porridge?

B.

Example: — Mr Hopper hasn't been to the cinema, has he?
— (But) yes, he has./No, he hasn't.

- 1) Mr Blake has written the letter, hasn't he?
- 2) Emma hasn't read the book, has she?
- 3) The girls have played the piano, haven't they?
- 4) Mrs Gordon and Polly haven't taken umbrellas with them, have they?
- 5) Lizzy has given a bone to the dog, hasn't she?
- 6) Mr Ford has spoken to the people in the hall, hasn't he?
- 7) Sally and Terry haven't eaten their porridge, have they?

- 8 A.** Read Kate's letter to Tanya and say what places Kate has visited in Washington, D.C.

Kate's Letter

8/23/04
Holiday Inn
Washington, D.C.

Dear Tanya,

I am writing to you to tell you about our stay in Washington, D.C. You have asked me to write about the US capital. So I am doing it in this letter. We really love the city. It is so green and so clean. It is situated on the Potomac River, on a piece [pi:s] of land called¹ the District of Columbia [kə'lʌmbiə], which is why people

¹ a piece of land called — кусок земли под названием





call the US capital Washington, D.C. It is not the biggest city in the United States, but it is the most important.

The buildings are not very high, the streets and avenues ['ævnju:z] are straight, green and beautiful. The longest and the biggest avenues are named after¹ American states. We have already done the centre of the city. We have been to the White House and seen the Capitol. The Capitol is really great. This is where the United States Congress meets and makes laws².


The building of the White House is very beautiful with tall columns ['kɒləmz] and the flag on the roof. It is the US president's residence. This is where the president lives and works. It is one of the most famous buildings in the world. Its name comes from the fact that it is a white house. Tourists can't see the part where the president lives, but they can see the Red Room, the Blue

¹ are named after — названы по

² a law [lɔ:] — закон

Room and the Green Room and some other rooms. By the way, the city is famous for its museums. I have been to the Natural History Museum, but I haven't seen the others yet.

Love,
Kate

B. Listen,  (14), and read the text "Kate's Letter" again after it.



9 Read out what the text says about.

- a) the Capitol b) the White House

10 A. Answer the questions about the text from exercise 8.

- 1) What is Washington and what is Washington, D.C.?
- 2) Do you think there are many parks, trees and flowers in Washington, D.C.? Why do you think so?
- 3) What river is the US capital situated on?
- 4) Why do people call their capital Washington, D.C.?
- 5) Are there any skyscrapers in Washington, D.C.?
- 6) What building do American congressmen work in? What do they do there?
- 7) What colour is the US President's residence?
- 8) Can tourists visit all the rooms in the White House? What places can't they visit?
- 9) Are there any famous museums in Washington, D.C.?

B. Answer the same questions about the capital of Russia. Compare the two capitals.



Social English

11 Learn to speak about your likes and dislikes in English.

Likes:

I really enjoy/like/love ...

I rather enjoy/like/love ...

I've always enjoyed/liked/loved...

I'm (rather) fond of ...

I think ... is (are) great
 wonderful
 lovely
 enjoyable
 very nice

Unit 2



English – a Global Language

49

Step One

Step One

Do It Together

- 1 A. Listen, (15), and complete the text.

The English Language

More people speak English than any other language except¹ (1). People speak English in Britain, Ireland, (2), New Zealand, (3) and some other countries. Altogether² more than (4) million people speak English as their everyday language. Another (5) million or more speak English as a foreign language. Most English words come from old Anglo-Saxon³, (6) or (7) words. Some people think that the English language is one of the richest languages of the world and has up to a (8) words.

B. What is the English language like nowadays?

- 2 Explain why it is so.

Example: — There are no pies on the plate. John (eat).
— John has eaten them.

- 1) — Their house is now yellow!
— Yes, they (paint) ...

¹ **except** [ɪk'sept] — кроме

² **altogether** [ˌɔːltə'geðə] — в целом

³ **Anglo-Saxon** [ˌæŋɡləʊ'sæksən] — the language of the Anglo-Saxons, the people who lived in England in early times, from about 600 AD.



- 2) — He knows everything about Moscow.
— I think he does. He (be) ... there many times.
- 3) — John, your car looks so clean!
— It should be. I (wash)
- 4) — Your grandparents are tired.
— Yes, they (come) back from the shops.
- 5) — Does Harry know about it?
— Yes, I (give) ... him a call.
- 6) — Is the book interesting?
— I don't know yet. I just (begin) ... reading it.
- 7) — Why is Jason in hospital?
— He (fall) ... off his bike.
- 8) — Roy knows nothing about our meeting.
— Sorry. I (not, speak) ... to him yet.



Focus

Запомните, что у следующих неправильных глаголов вторая и третья формы совпадают.

I	II	III
catch	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]
teach	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]
bring	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]
buy	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]
fight	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]
think	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]
build	built	built
send	sent	sent
spend	spent	spent
meet	met	met
leave	left	left
find	found	found
get	got	got
have	had	had

3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions.

- 1) What has Frank bought for his little sister?
- 2) What has Polly just brought home?
- 3) What have the children found?
- 4) What has little Bob built?



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 5.75 \\
 + \\
 4.25 \\
 \hline
 \pounds 10 \text{ (10 pounds)}
 \end{array}$$

10.

- 5) Who(m) have the Morgans met?
- 6) Has Jim had an apple? What has he just had?
- 7) Where have the friends left for?
- 8) What has Tom caught?
- 9) How many letters and how many postcards has Lena sent to her granny?
- 10) How much money have the girls spent on books?

- 4** Work in pairs. You have a lot of things to do. Write a plan and tick what you have already done. Tell your friend about your day.

Example: to wash up ✓
to buy bread ✓
to buy milk ✓

I have washed up.
I have bought bread.
I haven't bought milk yet.



Focus

Present perfect часто употребляется со следующими словами и словосочетаниями:

this morning	this week
this evening	this month
today	this year

I haven't seen Victor this morning. (Утро ещё не закончилось.)

We have been to Moscow this month. (Месяц ещё не завершён.)

- 5** Ask your friends:

- 1) what places they have visited this year;
- 2) what books they have read this week;
- 3) what they have bought this month;
- 4) what they have written today;
- 5) where they have been this week;
- 6) what films they have seen this month;
- 7) who(m) they have spoken to today;
- 8) what they have eaten today.

- 6** Say what you haven't done this year, this week, this month, today but would like to do.

Example: I haven't travelled much this year. I would like to go to England and France next year.



Focus

Если надо узнать, совершил ли уже кто-то какое-либо действие или нет, в конце вопроса в *present perfect* часто используется наречие **yet**.

Have you been to the bank yet? — Вы уже были в банке?

Have you done your room yet? — Ты уже убрал в комнате?

Has he come yet? — Он уже пришёл?

Иногда в подобных вопросах можно также встретить наречие **already**.

John, have you been to the bank already? — Джон, ты что, уже в банке бывал?

Have you already eaten all the cake, Ann? — Ты что, уже весь пирог съела, Аня?

Как видите, задающий Джону и Ане эти вопросы скорее выражает своё удивление или недоумение.

7 When Jim comes home after school, there is nobody in. His mother usually calls him to ask if he has done what he should do. What are her questions?

Example: to have lunch — Jim, have you had lunch yet?

- 1) to change clothes
- 2) to read the textbook
- 3) to do the exercises
- 4) to listen to the English songs
- 5) to play the piano
- 6) to water the flowers
- 7) to ring up granny
- 8) to work on the computer
- 9) to take Rex out
- 10) to give milk to the cat

8 A. Read the text and say what the figures¹ 450,000; 35,000; 10,000—12,000 mean in it.

Words... Words... Words...

We say them, we hear them, we read them and write them. And telephones, mobiles, radios, televisions, computers are all there to carry words to all parts of the world — and even to the Moon and back. How many words must a language have? For example², there are more than 450,000 words in *Webster's Third New International Dictionary*. No person ['pɜ:sn] knows all of them, but most people are able to understand about 35,000 and use about 10,000—12,000. Usually you use only one-tenth (1/10) of the words you understand.

¹ a figure ['fɪgə] — цифра

² for example — например

If you hear or read a new word and want to know what it means, you look the word up in a dictionary. Modern dictionaries are very different. Most of them give words alphabetically. With the word they give information about how to pronounce [prə'naʊns] it, what meaning or meanings it has, if there are any difficulties in its grammar and use. There are three big categories ['kætɪg(ə)rɪz] of dictionaries: monolingual [ˌmɒnəʊ'lɪŋgwəl], bilingual [baɪ'lɪŋgwəl] and multilingual [ˌmʌlti'lɪŋgwəl]. They give information about words in one (mono-), two (bi-) or more than two (multi-) languages.

B. Listen,  (16), and read the text.



9 Look at the two dictionary entries¹ and answer the questions.

- a) **library** ['laɪbrəri] *n* (*pl* libraries) a room or building for books.
librarian [laɪ'breəriən] *n* someone who works in a library. (*Oxford Basic English Dictionary. Oxford University Press, 1995.*)
- b) **handy** ['hændi] *adj* (handier, handiest) **1.** (clever with hands) умелый, мастеровой, рукастый (coll.²); he is - у него золотые руки. **2.** (easy to handle) удобный для пользования. **3.** (convenient) удобный, сподручный (coll.); it may come in - это может пригодиться. (*Oxford Russian Dictionary. Oxford University Press, 2000.*)

Questions

- 1) Which of the two words comes from a monolingual (bilingual) dictionary?
- 2) Where can you find information about how to pronounce the words?
- 3) How do you know that one of the words is a noun and the other is an adjective?
- 4) Which of the words has one and which more than one meaning?
- 5) Which of the dictionaries gives word combinations?
- 6) Which of the dictionaries gives derivatives³?
- 7) What does - stand for?

¹ a dictionary entry ['entri] — словарная статья

² coll. = colloquial [kə'lɒkwɪəl] — разговорный

³ a derivative [dɪ'rɪvətɪv] — производное слово



10 Listen, (17), and repeat the names of some countries, languages and nations.

I.

Country	Language (official)	People	Nations
America (the USA)	English	an American/ Americans	(the) Americans
Australia	English	an Australian/ Australians	(the) Australians
Canada	English/ French	a Canadian/Cana- dians	(the) Canadians
Germany	German	a German/Ger- mans	(the) Germans
Italy	Italian	an Italian/Italians	(the) Italians
Mexico	Spanish	a Mexican/Mexi- cans	(the) Mexicans
Norway	Norwegian	a Norwegian/Nor- wegians	(the) Norwegians
Russia	Russian	a Russian/Rus- sians	(the) Russians
China	Chinese	a Chinese/Chinese (people)	the Chinese
Portugal	Portuguese	a Portuguese/Por- tuguese (people)	the Portuguese
Japan	Japanese	a Japanese/Japa- nese (people)	the Japanese
Vietnam	Vietnam- ese	a Vietnamese/Vi- etnamese (people)	the Vietnamese

II.

Country	Language (official)	People		Nations
		Sing.	Pl.	
Holland	Dutch	a Dutchman/ a Dutchwoman	Dutchmen/ Dutchwomen	the Dutch
Britain	English	a Briton = a British person	Britons = British people	the British
England	English	an Englishman/ an Englishwoman	Englishmen/ Englishwomen, English people	the English
Ireland	Irish English	an Irishman/ an Irishwoman	Irishmen/Irish- women, Irish people	the Irish
France	French	a Frenchman/ a Frenchwoman	Frenchmen/ Frenchwomen	the French



Focus

Обратите внимание на то, что:

- название нации в целом обычно употребляется с определённым артиклем — *the English* (англичане); *the French* (французы), *the Chinese* (китайцы), *the Russians* (русские). Однако в случае слов на *-an* — (*the Americans*, (*the Canadians*) — он может опускаться;
- в некоторых случаях наименование отдельных представителей нации образуется при помощи сложных слов или словосочетаний — *an Englishman/an Englishwoman*, *English people*;
- во фразах типа «Я русский», «Он англичанин» чаще используется прилагательное, чем существительное. Ср.: *I am Russian. He is English. They are American.* (*I am a Russian. He is an Englishman. They are Americans.* — возможные, но значительно реже употребляемые варианты.)

11 Look at the maps and say what countries you can see there, people of what nationalities live there and what languages they speak.

Example: Number 1 on Map II is France. The French live in France. They speak French.

Map II



Map I



Map III



Do It on Your Own

12 Complete the sentences. Use nationality words.

- 1) Did you eat ... cheese when you were in Holland?
- 2) ... tea comes from China. It is world-famous.
- 3) Sumo is a ... sport in which two very large men fight.
- 4) In some ... restaurants you can eat borsch, blini and drink tea from a samovar.
- 5) The ... live on the British Isles.
- 6) Do people in Mexico speak ... like people in Spain?
- 7) Mike and Jack are Canadians. Do they speak ... or ...?
- 8) The ... celebrate the New Year holiday in the hottest time of the year.
- 9) When Paul was in Paris, he met some very nice Now they are good friends.
- 10) The Grimm brothers are They wrote their tales in the ... language.

13 This is John Barker. Write questions and ask if he has already:

- 1) been to Washington, D.C.;
- 2) seen the Capitol;
- 3) taken some pictures of the White House;
- 4) sent home some postcards;
- 5) had a trip to New York;
- 6) found many places of interest in the US;
- 7) brought some souvenirs from America;
- 8) met interesting people in the USA;
- 9) bought some American books.



Step Two

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the poem, (18), read it aloud and say what can help you to see the wind. Say in which lines of the poem Christina Rossetti uses *present perfect*?

The Wind

(Christina Rossetti)

Who has seen the wind?
 Neither I, nor you;
 But when the leaves hang trembling,
 The wind is passing through.

Who has seen the wind?
 Neither you nor I;
 But when the trees bow down their heads,
 The wind is passing by.

ни я, ни ты
 дрожа
 проходит сквозь
 них

кланяются,
 склоняют голо-
 вы
 проходит мимо

- 2 Which is right: a) or b)? Say in which four cases both are right¹.

1. a) The Chinese have come this evening.
 b) Chinese have come this evening.
2. a) Is he Norwegian?
 b) Is he a Norwegian?

¹ Say in which four cases both are right. — Скажи, в каких четырёх случаях правильны оба варианта.

3. a) The French are famous for their beautiful clothes.
b) French are famous for their beautiful clothes.
4. a) Russians are brave people.
b) The Russians are brave people.
5. a) Irish live on an island.
b) The Irish live on an island.
6. a) Those people who live in Holland speak the Dutch.
b) Those people who live in Holland speak Dutch.
7. a) The Japanese is a difficult language.
b) Japanese is a difficult language.
8. a) The Italians like having fun.
b) Italians like having fun.

3 Work in pairs. Ask if your friend has done these things this week (month, year, today).

Example: to do the room

- Have you done your room this week?
- Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

1) to learn a poem by heart, 2) to take pictures, 3) to buy a dictionary, 4) to swim in the swimming pool, 5) to find some money, 6) to be to the shops, 7) to see a good film, 8) to bring some flowers to your mum, 9) to give a call to your grandparent(s), 10) to visit the school library, 11) to spend a lot of money, 12) to catch a cold

4 Colin Baxter is having a birthday party this evening. He wants to know if everything is ready. Say what questions he asks Alice, his helper.

Example: to send e-mails to my friends

- Have you sent e-mails to my friends yet?

- 1) to get answers from my friends
- 2) to clean the floors
- 3) to do the dining room
- 4) to make an/the apple pie
- 5) to bake a/the cake
- 6) to buy fruit and sweets
- 7) to send for the flowers
- 8) to ring up my mother
- 9) to bring more chairs from the library
- 10) to think of some nice music



belong [bi'lɒŋ] — принадлежать
land [lənd] — 1) земля; 2) страна
speech [spi:tʃ] — речь
sound [saʊnd] — 1) *n* звук; 2) *v* звучать

slowly ['sləʊli] — медленно
also ['ɔ:lsəʊ] — тоже
way [weɪ] — 1) путь, дорога; 2) метод, способ
develop [di'veləp] — развиваться(ся)
grow [grəʊ] — расти
by and by — постепенно

B.

belong: to belong to someone, to belong to some place. These exercise books don't belong to me. This land belongs to a big family. Which swimming club do you belong to?

land: 1) (*countable*) a beautiful land, foreign lands. I'd like to see a lot of lands and to meet a lot of people. 2) (*uncountable*) dry land, stony land. Columbus's sailors didn't see land for a long time.

speech: a good speech, a long speech, to make a speech. James made a very interesting speech in Parliament yesterday. His speech is very difficult to understand.

sound (*n*): the sounds of music, strange sounds, beautiful sounds. Strange sounds were coming from the kitchen.

sound (*v*): to sound good, to sound English, to sound like the truth. That sounds like a train. Your new song sounds beautiful. This sentence sounds like good English.

forget (forgot, forgotten): to forget a word, to forget an/the address, to forget slowly (easily). I've forgotten her telephone number. She's forgotten where she has left her car. I'll never forget my first teacher.

forget-me-not: Forget-me-nots are blue and pink, they are spring flowers.

slowly: to walk slowly, to speak slowly. He slowly opened his eyes. We drove slowly down the country road.

also: He speaks English and he also speaks German. I like bananas and I also like oranges.

way: 1) a short way, a long way, an easy way, a funny way, the best way. Which is the way to the city centre? Will you be able to

find your way to my house? 2) What is the best way to learn a language? He has a strange way of talking.

develop: to develop into sb/sth, to develop from sth. A boy develops into a man. That little village has developed into a great city. I'd like to develop this idea. French developed from Latin.

grow (grew, grown [grəʊn]): to grow well, to grow slowly. Grass grows after rain. Oranges grow on trees, you know. The farmer has grown a lot of apples this year.

grow up: When I grow up, I will be a librarian.

by and by: They will change by and by.

6 Answer the questions.

1) English, German, French and Russian are Indo-European [ɪndəʊjʊərəˈpi:ən] languages. Does English belong to the same language group as German? French? Russian?

2) Do you think languages develop?

3) Do you think you are able to make a speech in English? in Russian?

4) To what foreign lands have you been? Would you like to go?

5) Why do teachers call some children "slow learners"?

6) What is the right way to read the word c-a-u-g-h-t?

7) How many sounds are there in the word c-a-u-g-h-t? And how many letters?

8) What's the best way to learn English?

9) Is your love of the English language growing by and by or not?

10) Are you also thinking of learning another foreign language?

11) Do you think people can forget their own language living in a foreign land?

12) Do you easily forget names?


7 A. Read the text and choose the right item in the sentences after it.

Why Don't We All Speak the Same Language?

There is a theory ['θɛəri] which says that at one time, at the beginning of history all people spoke the same language. They call it a parent language. Maybe there were two or more parent languages then. At first they belonged to small groups of people. By and by these groups became bigger and went to live in new lands. In

their new countries they first spoke their old language but with time their speech began to sound different. In the new places those people stopped using some of the old words and so they forgot them. The structure ['strʌktʃə] of their sentences slowly changed too. They also made new words to speak about new things they found in the new lands. After a long time the changes in words, pronunciation [prəˌnɑːnsi'eɪʃn] and grammar were so great that their language began to sound like a different one. That was how a new language was born. In just these ways, Spanish, French and Portuguese developed from Latin ['lætn] and English, Norwegian, Dutch and some other languages grew from an early form of the German language.

- 1) A parent language is the language ... modern languages developed.
 - a) from which
 - b) into which
- 2) At first the parent language belonged to ... people.
 - a) a lot of
 - b) rather few
- 3) With time bigger groups of people ... the new lands.
 - a) left
 - b) left for
- 4) In the new lands their language began to
 - a) change
 - b) become worse
- 5) In the new lands people forgot ... of the old words.
 - a) all
 - b) some
- 6) A new language is born
 - a) slowly
 - b) overnight¹
- 7) French and Spanish belong to
 - a) the same language
 - b) different languages
- 8) Norwegian and Dutch developed from
 - a) Latin
 - b) an early form of the German language

B. Listen,  (20), and read the text.



Focus

Уже известное вам слово **too** и новое слово **also** переводятся одинаково, с помощью русского «тоже». Обратите внимание на то, что **too** обычно стоит в конце предложения. She speaks French too.

¹ **overnight** [ˌoʊvəˈnaɪt] — *ад.*: очень быстро

Слово **also** чаще используется в середине, обычно перед основным глаголом (кроме глагола to be).

She also speaks French.

She can also speak French.

Но: She is also French.

Also иногда используется в начале предложения.

He has written two letters. Also he has written three postcards.

Для разговорной речи более типично употребление слова **too**.

6 Paraphrase these sentences.

Example: I've been to the USA. I've been to Canada too.

I've been to the USA and also to Canada. (I've been to the USA and I've also been to Canada.)

- 1) I like growing roses. I like growing forget-me-nots too.
- 2) Great Britain is a beautiful island. Ireland is a beautiful island too.
- 3) Watching television tonight sounds good to me. Watching videos sounds good too.
- 4) Spanish developed from Latin. Italian developed from Latin too.
- 5) English grew from an early form of the German language. Norwegian grew from an early form of the German language too.
- 6) French sounds beautiful. Italian sounds beautiful too.
- 7) Going abroad is a good way of learning English. Listening to tapes and reading books is a good way of learning English too.
- 8) Lilies of the valley are spring flowers. Forget-me-nots are spring flowers too.



Focus

Запомните три формы следующих неправильных глаголов.

I	II	III
break	broke	broken
choose	chose	chosen
drive	drove	driven ['drɪvən]
ride	rode	ridden [rɪdɪn]
go	went	gone [gɒn]

9 Complete these sentences. Use *present perfect*.

1) Sorry, I (break) your favourite pen. 2) Which of the mobiles you (choose)? 3) Little Dick never (ride) a horse. 4) Is Frank at home? — Yes, he just (drive) back. 5) Where Nick (go)? — He (go) to the bank. 6) Jane says she never (break) her leg. 7) You (choose) a birthday present for Mary yet? 8) You ever (ride) a bike? 9) I already (drive) my father's car. 10) Where is Ann? Where she (go)? — She (go) to the cinema. There is a very good film on at the "Rossiya" cinema.



Focus

Обратите внимание на разный смысл предложений.

- 1) He has gone to the bank. (Он ушёл в банк. Он сейчас в банке.)
 2) He has been to the bank today. (Он был (побывал) в банке, но его уже там нет.)

10 Complete the sentences. Use *gone* or *been*.

- 1) Mark has ... to the swimming pool.



- 2) Sid has ... to the library.



- 3) Diana and Polly have ... to the shops.



4) Mr Hunt has ... to the airport.



5) The girls have ... to the cinema.



6) Greg and Tony have ... to the museum.



Do It on Your Own

11 Write the same in English.

Принадлежать семье, постепенно, развиваться, медленно, произнести речь, латинский язык, меняться медленно, лучший способ, длинный путь, приятные звуки, расти на юге, сухая земля, прекрасная страна, превратиться в мужчину.

12 Mr Norman Andrews has had a very busy day today. Write what he has done.

Example: to be to the bank
Norman has been to the bank.

- 1) to make a speech at the meeting
- 2) to have lunch with his boss

- 3) to send some business letters
- 4) to drive to the airport
- 5) to choose a birthday present
- 6) to ride a bike in the park
- 7) to go to bed early

Step Three

Do It Together

1 Listen, (21), and say what their nationalities are.

Example: Paul Davis is British.



Paul Davis



Julia



Max



Anna



Chris



Nina



Martha



Samuel



Swen



Frida



2 Say how good you are as a pupil. Choose a, b or c.

- 1) You come to school
 - a) well before the bell
 - b) just before the bell
 - c) after the bell
- 2) You remember to bring
 - a) all your school books
 - b) some of your school books
 - c) very few of your school books
- 3) You ... forget to do your homework.
 - a) never
 - b) sometimes
 - c) always
- 4) Your answers
 - a) always sound correct
 - b) sometimes sound correct
 - c) do not often sound correct
- 5) Your tests are
 - a) usually good
 - b) sometimes good
 - c) practically never good
- 6) You have developed ... in your school subjects.
 - a) a great interest
 - b) some interest
 - c) no interest
- 7) This interest is
 - a) growing
 - b) growing very slowly
 - c) not growing at all¹
- 8) You ... being a pupil.
 - a) love
 - b) rather like
 - c) hate

Sum up your points: a — 3, b — 2, c — 1. If you have 20—24 points, you are a fantastic pupil. If you have 16—20 points, you are a good pupil; if you have less than 16 points, you should try harder.

¹ at all — совсем



Вы уже знаете, что новые слова в английском языке можно образовать при помощи суффиксов и префиксов (приставок). Познакомьтесь с некоторыми новыми суффиксами.

Суффикс **-less** указывает на отсутствие чего-либо, какого-либо качества и служит для образования прилагательных.

child + less = childless (бездетный)
 end + less = endless (бесконечный)
 speech + less = speechless (немой)
 use + less = useless (бесполезный)
 cloud + less = cloudless (безоблачный)

Суффикс **-ly** служит для образования наречий и реже — прилагательных.

deep + ly = deeply (глубоко)	kindly — добродушный
slow + ly = slowly (медленно)	lovely — прелестный
terrible + ly = terribly (ужасно)	

Обратите внимание, что если прилагательное оканчивается на **y**, то в наречии эта буква меняется на **i**:

easy — easily	happy — happily
busy — busily	heavy — heavily
lazy — lazily	dry — dryly/drily

3 Form adverbs from the adjectives and use some of them in the sentences.

cold, dry, nice, warm, bad, happy, sad, brave, busy, free, heavy, honest, lazy, light, neat, selfish, special, stylish, sure, terrible, traditional, real

1) Mr Robinson always speaks to me 2) Pat walked ... in the park looking at the trees. 3) Jenny dresses ... and always wears fashionable shoes. 4) Many teachers ... begin teaching English with present progressive. 5) Bob fought ... but didn't win. 6) Mrs Davidson stood up ... from her chair and went to the kitchen to cook. 7) Patrick told me ... that he didn't like my results. 8) Old Mrs Brown lives ... with her children. 9) ... she didn't mean it. She just said it without thinking. 10) Old Mrs Clark can't forget her friends and always smiles ... when she remembers them.

4 Paraphrase these sentences as in the examples.

A.

Example: Mr Brown has no children. Mr Brown is childless.

- 1) There are no clouds in the sky.
- 2) Jack has no hair.
- 3) There is no use in this job.
- 4) The valley did not have an end.
- 5) Mrs Loveday didn't have any hope.
- 6) The last leaf has fallen down from the tree.
- 7) There were no stars in the sky that night.

B.

Example: It is not important. It is unimportant.

- 1) The boy's manners are not pleasant.
- 2) Jack is not able to do it.
- 3) That was not a usual job.
- 4) Mr Flint is not a successful businessman.
- 5) Jane's clothes are stylish.
- 6) Helen is not a selfish girl.
- 7) Bob is not sure of our success.
- 8) Theirs was not an official visit.



Focus

Описать то, что человек сделал, можно, используя разные времена. Если известно, КОГДА, а часто и ГДЕ произошло действие в прошлом, и оно непосредственно не связано с настоящим, употребляется *past simple*.

We went to the USA last year. (Известно, когда и где мы были.)

Если говорящему не важно, когда действие произошло, а важен его результат, который связан с настоящим моментом, используется *present perfect*.

I have read the book. (Книга прочитана, я знаю, о чём она.)

Past simple	Present perfect
I wrote a letter yesterday. (Известно когда.)	I have written a letter. (Важен результат: письмо написано.)
Bob broke my cup two days ago. (Известно когда.)	Bob has broken my cup. (Важен результат: чашка разбита.)

Обратите внимание на то, что в диалогах часто первый вопрос (реплика) задаётся в **present perfect**, а последующий разговор, выяснение деталей происходит в **past simple**.

- Have you written the letter, Mary?
- Yes, I have.
- When did you write it?
- I wrote it yesterday.

5 Past simple or present perfect?

- 1) I (see) Mr Jackson a minute ago. He (be) in the school yard.
- 2) I am so sorry. I just (break) your favourite vase.
- 3) Father, look, we (buy) a new boat!
- 4) Alice (buy) a new dress last Saturday.
- 5) Fred (ride) his horse in the park yesterday.
- 6) Jane already (finish) doing her room. It is very clean.
- 7) I (choose) this dress. Do you like it?
- 8) Where is John? Where he (go)?
- 9) You ever (eat) sushi? What is it like?
- 10) I'm not hungry. I (have) already lunch.
- 11) Last week I (teach) my son swimming.
- 12) Last summer Victor (get) up very late.
- 13) Mum, have a look! I (find) a beautiful stone. It is brown, yellow and orange.
- 14) Jack (fight) with his best friend last Tuesday.
- 15) Bob says he never (be) here.


6 Complete the dialogues and act them out.

Example: — Have you bought the dictionary?
 — Yes, I have.
 — When did you buy it?
 — I bought it three days ago.

- 1) — Have you seen this film?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —
- 2) — Has your brother rung up granny?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —



- 3) — Have they been to Paris?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —
- 4) — Have the children found their pet?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —
- 5) — Have you begun your French classes?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —
- 6) — Has she had lunch yet?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —
- 7) — Have Mary and John finished their homework?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —
- 8) — Has Bobby played the piano?
 — Yes,
 — When ... ?
 —

7 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen,  (22), and repeat.



kind [kaɪnd] — вид, сорт, тип, разновидность

kind of — вроде бы (*разг.*)

popular ['pɒpjələ] — популярный

culture ['kʌltʃə] — культура

true [tru:] — правдивый, правильный, настоящий, истинный

truly ['tru:lɪ] — правдиво, действительно

probable ['prɒbəbl] — возможный

probably ['prɒbəbli] — возможно

vocabulary [və'kæbjʊləri] — словарь, словарный запас

science ['saɪəns] — наука

scientist ['saɪəntɪst] — учёный

scientific [ˌsaɪəntɪ'fɪk] — научный

technology [tek'nɒlədʒi] — техника, технология

voice [vɔɪs] — голос

air [eə] — воздух

kind: different kinds of food, a good kind of job. What kind of dog is that? It is a rottweiler ['rɒtvaɪlə]. He is the kind of boy who is always fighting. There are no notes of any kind on the table.

kind of: He is kind of unhappy. He looked kind of angry.

popular: a popular song, a popular sportsman; to be popular with sb. This hotel is popular with the tourists.

culture: modern culture, Russian culture, the cultures of Eastern countries. They are people of different cultures.

true: a true story, a true answer, a true friend. Is it true that Jennifer is a child prodigy? His book gives a true picture of life in South Africa.

truly: I truly believe all her words. Roy loved Jane truly.

probable: a probable result. This is probable but I don't think it will happen.

probably: I'll probably telephone you this evening.

vocabulary: Shakespeare's vocabulary, a poor vocabulary. John has a vocabulary of about ten thousand words.

science: Biology, Chemistry and Physics are sciences. Susan is a science teacher. He works in the field of science.

scientist: D. I. Mendeleev was a great scientist.

scientific: a scientific fact, scientific instruments.

technology: a college of science and technology, information technology. Science and technology develop in each country.

voice: a deep voice, a pleasant voice. Fred spoke in a quiet voice.

fresh: fresh flowers, fresh water, fresh vegetables. You are looking fresh this morning. The swimming pool has fresh water in it, not sea water.

air: high in the air, in the open air. Mrs Reynolds went out into the street to get some fresh air.

in other words: English is very important for your future job, in other words, you should begin learning it really well.

8 Complete the sentences using the new words.

- 1) A. S. Pushkin had more than 20,000 words in his v... .
- 2) My doctor says I must spend a lot of time in the open a... .
- 3) You're my friend, my only and t... friend.
- 4) Frank is very busy this week. I am not sure but p... he will find some free time and visit us.
- 5) What k... of pupil is Helen?
- 6) M. V. Lomonosov was a great Russian s... .
- 7) V. V. Vernadsky's s... works are well known abroad.
- 8) The new teacher is very p... with children.
- 9) Our nurse

always speaks in a very quiet v... . 10) On the 6th of June people bring f... flowers to the monument to A. S. Pushkin in Pushkinskaya Square. 11) Valya is very much interested in s... and t... . 12) If you are looking for c..., then Paris is the place for you.

9 A. Read the text and say where people use English internationally.

Different Kinds of English

Part I

In the 16th century the people who lived in Europe did not know English. They couldn't understand English words. Only those who lived on the island called Great Britain, spoke English. English was useless for the people of the continent. In those years Latin, French, German and Italian were popular and widely known.

Four hundred years later the speakers of English travelled into every corner of the globe carrying their language and culture with them. Today English is more important than any other language has ever been. It has become the language of the planet, the first truly global language. Of all the world's languages it is probably the richest in vocabulary. Now it is the language of technology and science, business and sport. English is the official language of the Olympics, the official voice of the air and of the sea. People use English as the first language in English-speaking countries such as Britain, the USA, Canada, Australia and New Zealand. It has become the second language in countries like India, Nigeria [naɪ'dʒɪəriə] and Singapore [sɪŋə'pɔː]. Then there is English as a foreign language. People teach and learn English as a foreign language in Europe and Asia, in Africa and South America, in other words, all over the world.

But English is not the same everywhere. Several kinds of English have appeared. They are American English, Canadian English, Australian English, etc. People who live in Britain speak British English.

B. Listen,  (23), and read the text again after it.

10 A. Read out of the text "Different Kinds of English" sentences that mean the same as the sentences below.

- 1) At that time Europeans did not speak English.
- 2) Only the British spoke this language.
- 3) People who lived in other European countries could not use this language.



- 4) English-speaking people brought their language to every part of the world.
- 5) English may have the largest number of words of all the languages.
- 6) People use English in air and sea navigation.
- 7) English is different in all the countries where they speak it.
- 8) A few types of English have developed.

B. Say what you have learned about English. Follow the plan.

1. English in the 16th century.
2. English today:
 - a) English as a global language;
 - b) English as the first or the second language;
 - c) English as a foreign language.
3. Different kinds of English.

Do It on Your Own

11 Paraphrase the sentences. Use adverbs.

Example: Mrs Ross leads a happy life. She lives happily.

- 1) John is a slow reader.
- 2) They sing this song in a different way.
- 3) Jim is free to speak as he likes. (Jim can speak...)
- 4) Barbara always wears stylish dresses. (She dresses...)
- 5) Jack always gives me a warm smile when we meet. (He always greets me...)
- 6) Mary has a strong dislike for cats.
- 7) Tom knows a clever way of doing this job.
- 8) Put on your warm clothes, the weather is very cold today.
- 9) When Jane was speaking, her words sounded sad.
- 10) The news gave me a great surprise.

12 Express the same in English.

Настоящий друг, правдивый ответ, разные культуры, какой-то сердитый, свежие фрукты, большой запас слов, тёплый воздух, возможный ответ, наука и техника, популярный среди туристов, высокий голос, великий учёный, любые виды (разновидности), научные факты.

Do It Together



75

Step Four

1 Listen, (24), and say why they are not doing it.

1) Colin, 2) Jenny, 3) Ruth, 4) Chris, 5) Polly, 6) Sue

2 Roy and his friends like learning foreign languages. They know the language of the country where they are from and the language of the country where they are living now. Say what languages they can speak.

Example: Tom comes from Italy. He is in Spain now.

Tom speaks Italian and he can also speak Spanish.

- 1) Patrick comes from Germany. Now he is in China.
- 2) Barbara comes from Norway. Now she is in Japan.
- 3) Oleg comes from Russia. Now he is in Canada.
- 4) Victor comes from France. Now he is in Holland.
- 5) Kate comes from Mexico. Now she is in Portugal.
- 6) Zara comes from Australia. Now she is in Vietnam.
- 7) Sue comes from Ireland. Now she is in New Zealand.
- 8) Peter comes from Belarus. Now he is in the USA.

3 Complete the dialogues. Choose the answers from part B.

A.

- 1) Do you want some lunch?
- 2) What are you going to have?
- 3) Can you draw pictures with your computer?
- 4) Your brother's car looks very new.
- 5) Is it cold this morning?
- 6) Where are the sandwiches?
- 7) What about our present for Sue?
- 8) Do you know when Doris is flying to America?

B.

- a) No wonder¹. He has just bought it.
- b) Yes, it is. I've just been out.
- c) No, thanks. I've just had some.
- d) No, I haven't spoken to her yet.
- e) I don't know. I have never done it.
- f) I haven't decided yet.
- g) I've eaten them all. I'm sorry.
- h) Sorry, I haven't bought it.

¹ no wonder ['wʌndə] — неудивительно



У следующих неправильных глаголов вторая и третья формы совпадают.

I	II	III
burn	burnt	burnt
dream	dreamed/ dreamt [dremt]	dreamed/ dreamt [dremt]
hear	heard	heard
learn	learned/ learnt	learned/ learnt
let	let	let
make	made	made
mean	meant [ment]	meant [ment]
put	put	put
say	said [sed]	said [sed]
tell	told	told
spell	spelt	spelt
stand	stood	stood
strike	struck	struck
understand	understood	understood
win	won	won

4 Work in pairs. Ask questions and answer them. Begin your questions with "Have you ever...?"

Example: Have you ever written a poem? — Yes, I have.

A.

- 1) burn your hand
- 2) win chess games
- 3) make a cake
- 4) send e-mails
- 5) spend your holidays abroad
- 6) buy a pet
- 7) teach any school subject
- 8) grow vegetables
- 9) speak German
- 10) write a poem

B.

- 1) tell lies
- 2) learn French
- 3) hear "The Beatles"
- 4) spell your name in English
- 5) dream of going to China or Japan
- 6) fall off a bike
- 7) read poems by John Keats
- 8) buy brown rice or brown sugar
- 9) build a house
- 10) eat mangos

5 Make up dialogues and act them out.

Example: to drive (my new car)/last Sunday

A: I have already driven my new car.

B: When did you drive it?

A: I drove my car last Sunday.

- 1) to cook (lunch)/an hour ago
- 2) to begin reading (a Harry Potter book)/last week
- 3) to leave (for Moscow)/two weeks ago
- 4) to choose (a present)/a minute ago
- 5) to break (my mother's cup)/yesterday
- 6) to ride (my new bike)/last weekend
- 7) to speak (to our new teacher)/last Friday
- 8) to send (a birthday card to mum)/three days ago
- 9) to learn (the poem by heart)/yesterday
- 10) to do (exercise ten)/last evening
- 11) to make (a dress)/a few days ago



Focus

Обратите внимание на то, что с указателями *this morning*, *this afternoon* могут употребляться и **present perfect**, и **past simple**. Выбор того или иного времени зависит не от того, когда конкретно происходило действие, а от того, когда о нём говорят. Ср.:

1) I have seen him this morning. (Разговор происходит до 12:00, утро ещё не закончилось.)

I saw him this morning. (Разговор происходит после 12:00, утро уже закончилось.)

2) I've spoken to Alan this afternoon. (Разговор происходит до 18:00.)

I spoke to Alan this afternoon. (Разговор происходит вечером после 18:00.)

6 What is Sarah saying?

Example: to send an e-mail this morning (16:00)

I sent an e-mail this morning.

to meet John this afternoon (15:30)

I've met John this afternoon.

- 1) to play volleyball this morning (13:00)
- 2) to watch an interesting film this morning (11:00)
- 3) to call my friend this morning (15:00)
- 4) to see Anna this afternoon (21:00)
- 5) to speak to Dr Ross this afternoon (14:00)



**Vocabulary***(pl vocabularies)*

- 1) all the words in a language (*словарный состав*)
English has one of the largest vocabularies.
- 2) a list of words in a lesson or a book (*список слов*)
How many words are there in your textbook vocabulary?
- 3) all the words that a person¹ knows (*запас слов*)
A young child has a small vocabulary.

Dictionary*(pl dictionaries)*

a book that gives words from A to Z with their meanings
I have bought two English-Russian dictionaries.

7 Fill in the missing words.

- 1) Doctors use a special ... when they talk about medicine.
- 2) Where did you buy this ... for children?
- 3) The baby's ... is very small, he knows only ten words.
- 4) There is a ... at the end of the book. You can find all the difficult words there.
- 5) What famous ... of the English language do you know?
- 6) This book is a German-English
- 7) Pupils write the new English words in their
- 8) When you open a ... , you can learn a lot about words.

8 A. Read the text and say why it can be difficult for American and British people to understand each other.

Different Kinds of English

Part II

As you already know people speak different kinds of English. For example, we can hear different forms of English in different parts of the English-speaking world. Those people who live in India speak Indian English, in Canada — Canadian English, in Australia — Australian English. British English and American English are the most important kinds of the English language because people use them very widely. And they are not really that much different. If you meet people who come from the USA,

¹ a person [ˈpɜːsn] — человек, личность



you can say that their language sounds different from British English. You will be able to say that these people are not British. But you won't probably have much difficulty in understanding what they say.

It is so because the vocabulary and grammar of the language is very much the same. But some things have different names in Britain and America. Compare these.

Russian word	American word	British word
осень	fall	autumn
лифт	elevator ['elɪveɪtə]	lift
грузовик	truck	lorry
кинофильм	movie ['mu:vi]	film
кинотеатр	movies	cinema
конфета	candy ['kændi]	sweet
печенье	cookies ['kʊkɪz]	biscuits ['bɪskɪts]
бензин	gas(oline) ['gæsəli:n]	petrol ['petrəl]
жареный картофель (тонкими ломтиками)	(French) fries [fraɪz]	chips
кран (водопровод- ный)	faucet ['fɔ:sɪt]	tap
плита	stove	cooker
свитер	sweater	jumper
мусор	garbage ['gɑ:bɪdʒ]	rubbish
мусорный ящик/бак	garbage can	dustbin ['dʌstbɪn]
тротуар	sidewalk ['saɪdwɔ:k]	pavement ['peɪvmənt]
автостоянка	parking lot	car park
аптека	drugstore ['drʌgstɔ:]	chemist's ['kemɪsts]
брюки	pants	trousers

B. Listen,  (25), and read the text again after it.



- 9 The Robinsons live in Britain and the Wilsons live in the US. Their lives are very much the same. They do the same things every day. Read the text about the Robinsons and describe the Wilsons' day. Use American English.

The Robinsons are a British family. They live in Manchester. This is their usual weekday. They get up at 6:30. Tom Robinson goes to the bathroom. He turns on the *tap*, has a shower, cleans his teeth and puts on his favourite clothes — a dark blue *jumper* and old grey *trousers*. Tom is a *lorry* driver so he doesn't wear any good clothes to work.

While Tom is dressing, his wife Mary gets his breakfast ready. She cooks eggs on the *cooker*. Tom likes a big breakfast before he goes to work. Mary doesn't eat much for breakfast — just a cup of coffee and some *biscuits* after which she puts her favourite *sweet* in her mouth and washes up.

After breakfast Tom kisses his wife and leaves home at seven. He has a busy day in front of him. He drives his *lorry* to the *petrol* station and starts off. He has lunch at 12:30. He usually has fish and *chips* in a small café and drinks two mugs of the strongest tea. Tom works until five and returns home at six.

In the morning Mary cleans the flat, takes the *rubbish* out and puts it in the *dustbin* standing on the street *pavement*. Then she goes to the *chemist's* where she works. She also comes back home at six.

Tom and Mary like to go out in the evening. They get their old Ford out of the *car park* and drive to the *cinema*. They are fond of watching new *films* and never miss them.

Do It on Your Own

- 10 Write the names of these things in American English and British English.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.



13.



14.

11 Develop these situations.

Example: Peter has learned 15 English words.

Peter has learned 15 English words. He learned them because he wanted to be ready for his English class.

- 1) Jane has burnt the apple pie.
- 2) Samantha has put on her new dress.
- 3) Little Willy has spelt his name correctly.
- 4) Tina has made no mistakes in the test.
- 5) The teacher has let me miss his class.
- 6) We have already heard the news.
- 7) Boris has not told us the truth.
- 8) James has won the game.

Do It Together

- 1 Listen, (26), about Daniel Radcliffe and complete the sentences.

Daniel Radcliffe



- 1) Daniel was born
- 2) Daniel's pets are
- 3) Daniel loves playing
- 4) In future he would like to become
- 5) His favourite subject at school is

- 2 You have had a bad day. Your elder sister or brother is not happy about it. Make up a dialogue. Be ready to act it out in class.

Example: not to clean the floors/to forget
 — Why haven't you cleaned the floors?
 — Sorry, I forgot, etc.

- 1) not to eat the porridge/not to be hungry
- 2) not to finish your homework/my friend, ring up
- 3) not to clean your room/to be busy
- 4) not to ring the doctor up/to forget his telephone number
- 5) not to do the shopping/to leave the money at home
- 6) not to watch the new film/to miss it
- 7) not to learn the poem/to find it too difficult
- 8) not to win the race/not to be ready for it
- 9) not to make your chocolate cake/to have no butter at home



Focus

Present perfect часто употребляется

1) с такими обстоятельствами, как
before [br'fɔ:] — прежде; **lately** ['leɪtli] — недавно, в последнее время;
several ['sev(ə)rəl] **times** — несколько раз; **many times** — много раз; **the first time** — в первый раз.

I have never eaten a mango before.
 I haven't seen him lately.



Jack has been to Norway several times.
We have heard this melody many times.
It's the first time I've come to this disco.

2) в предложениях с именами прилагательными в превосходной степени типа:

It's the best film I have ever seen.
She is the most beautiful lady Jack has ever seen.

3 A. Complete the sentences. Use present perfect.

I have (never)	been seen eaten played bought met read visited	...	lately. before. several times. many times.
----------------	---	-----	---

B. It's Martin's first visit to America. Say what he has done for the first time.

Example: He has never been to New York before.
It's the first time he has been to New York.

- 1) He has never done [dʌn] the Metropolitan Museum before.
- 2) He has never played baseball before.
- 3) He has never swum in the ocean before.
- 4) He has never seen skyscrapers before.
- 5) He has never eaten American food before.
- 6) He has never driven in a limo¹ before.
- 7) He has never enjoyed a Broadway musical before.
- 8) He has never stayed in the Carlton Hotel before.
- 9) He has never listened to concerts in Carnegie Hall.
- 10) He has never travelled about the country so much.



¹ a limo ['lɪməʊ] – a limousine

4 Complete these sentences using *present perfect* of the verbs and the adjectives in the superlative.

Example: The temperature is +35 °C today. It's the hottest temperature we ever (have).

It's the hottest temperature we have ever had.

- 1) I really love this film. It is (interesting/see).
- 2) I don't think you should read this book. It is (boring/read).
- 3) Your marks are terrible. They are (bad/have).
- 4) Jane, you look wonderful today. You are wearing a very nice hat. It is (good/see).
- 5) This year winter is so cold. It is (cold/have).
- 6) The basketball player is so big. He is (tall/see).
- 7) The children are really enjoying their holidays. They are (good/have).
- 8) The result of the game is terrible. It is (bad/see).

5 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (27), and repeat.



A.

fast [fɑ:st] — 1) *adj* быстрый;

2) *adv* быстро

prefer [prɪ'fɜ:z] — предпоче-
тать

follow ['fɒləʊ] — 1) следовать
(за); 2) понимать

following ['fɒləʊɪŋ] — сле-
дующий

regular ['regjʊlə] — регуля-
рный

regularly ['regjʊləli] — регу-
лярно

rich [rɪʃ] — богатый

such [sʌʃ] — такой

perfect ['pɜ:fɪkt] — совершен-
ный

need [ni:d] — нуждаться

wait [weɪt] — ждать

pronunciation [prəˌnʌnsi'eɪʃn] —
произношение

maybe — может быть, воз-
можно

B.

fast: 1) a fast train, a fast car. My watch is fast. 2) to talk fast, to walk fast, to drive fast, to think fast. I can't run very fast.

prefer (preferred): to prefer tea to coffee, to prefer (to do) doing something. John preferred riding a bike to walking.

follow: 1) to follow some rule, to follow a person. Tuesday follows Monday. I was sure that someone was following me. 2) to follow a speech, to follow a film. Do you follow what I am saying?

following: On the following day. Read the following carefully.
regular(ly): regular meetings, to meet regularly. He regularly visits his granny.

rich: a rich woman, a rich country. Alan Parson is a rich Englishman.

the rich = rich people

such: such an interesting book, such a boring film, such rich people, such fast cars. It is such sweet tea that I can't drink it.

perfect: a perfect day, a perfect lady, perfect results. This room is absolutely perfect for our meeting. *Practice makes perfect* means: if you do something regularly, you will learn to do it perfectly.

need: to need water, to need food, to need to go to school. You'll need some warm clothes for the winter. You can stay longer if you need to.

wait: to wait for the teacher, to wait for the bus. Let's sit down and wait until Bobby comes here.

pronunciation: the right pronunciation. Her pronunciation is getting better.

maybe: Maybe I'll come too. There were maybe fifteen people there. Maybe it will snow tonight.

in fact: I thought Betty was in her room but in fact she was in the garden.

to grow up: She is really starting to grow up now. She is not a child anymore.

at the beginning: At the beginning of the story we didn't understand anything. At the beginning I didn't think about becoming a journalist.

to come with practice: You'll learn to do it easily, it comes with practice.

6 A. Name three things that can be:

- | | |
|------------|---------------|
| 1) popular | 5) rich |
| 2) fresh | 6) probable |
| 3) true | 7) scientific |
| 4) regular | 8) perfect |

B. Paraphrase using the new words.

1) to like tea more than coffee, 2) to walk behind somebody, 3) to train sounds, 4) probably, 5) a car that is not slow, 6) a man who is not poor, 7) to come every day

C. Find the opposites.

- | | |
|---------------|---------------------|
| early — ... | slow — ... |
| seldom — ... | good — ... |
| popular — ... | forget — ... |
| poor — ... | to tell a lie — ... |
| modern — ... | to stay — ... |



Focus

После слова **such** может идти:

а) имя существительное в единственном числе с неопределённым артиклем:

Alex is **such** a good pupil.
It is **such** an interesting book!

б) имя существительное во множественном числе без артикля:

I like **such** pupils.

в) имя существительное неисчисляемое без артикля:

It is **such** terrible weather we're having today.
Such juice is very tasty.

7 Write what these people say.

Example: wash/dirty clothes

I have never washed **such** dirty clothes.



1.



2.



3.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.

1) hear/terrible music, 2) meet/a beautiful girl, 3) read/a boring book, 4) eat/a tasty cake, 5) see/a sad film, 6) drive/a bad car, 7) write/a long letter, 8) watch/interesting shows, 9) play difficult games

8 A. Read the dialogue and say how Masha, Boris and Sergey are going to use English in the future.

Interview

Interviewer: I know that you are all learning English. Do you find it difficult?

Masha: No, not really. I think language learning is fun. And I can learn it fast.

Sergey: I find it rather difficult. Especially grammar. My teacher says I make a lot of grammar mistakes. In fact I prefer reading.

Interviewer: And what about you, Boris?

Boris: I liked learning English at the beginning, but now it is getting more difficult and less fun. There are so many things to remember — words, grammar, spelling, pronunciation. English has such a rich vocabulary... And I don't always understand my teacher.

Interviewer: I see. And what do you do to learn English successfully?

Have you got any special rules that you follow?

Masha: I try to do my homework regularly. It helps me to practise English when there are no classes. I know that "practice means perfect". I also watch films in English and listen to CDs.

Boris: I listen to English songs. Eminem is my favourite singer. English songs help me to understand English better. I have learned some of them and sing them with my friends.

Sergey: I do a lot of exercises, watch American films in English and read adapted books. That's what I like most of all.

Interviewer: And may I ask you how you are planning to use English in the future?

Sergey: I'd like to learn to speak English well because I want to visit many countries of the world and meet different people. I hope I'll be able to speak English to them.

Boris: I'd like to be a computer programmer and I'll need English for my future job. A lot of modern computer programmes are in English.

Masha: I don't know how I am going to use my English yet. I just like learning it. Maybe I'll learn another language — French, Spanish or Italian. Maybe I'll become a linguist. I can't wait to grow up and go to university.



B. Listen, (28), read the dialogue in groups of four after it and then act the dialogue out.



9 A. How would you answer the interviewer's questions?

- 1) Do you find language learning difficult?
- 2) What do you do to learn English successfully?

- 3) How are you planning to use English in the future?
4) Why are you learning English?

B. Put your answers together and explain to an imaginary English speaker why and how you are learning English.



Social English

89

Step Five

10 A. Learn to show your surprise in English.

Oh! Dear me! (*Боже мой!*)
Really? (*Неужели?*)
Is that so? (*Так ли это? Неужели?*)
You don't say so! (*Не может быть!*)
Fancy that! (*Подумайте только!*)
Well, I never... (*Вот так так!*)
I am surprised. (*Я удивлён.*)
I am shocked. (*Я потрясён.*)
It's incredible! (*Невероятно!*)

B. Read out the sentences and give your reaction to them.

- 1) Nowadays about 400 million people speak English.
- 2) Nowadays English is second only to Chinese in the number of people who speak it.
- 3) About 300 million people living in more than 60 countries speak English as a second language.
- 4) There are about 5,000 languages and dialects in the world today. About 845 come from India.
- 5) People use 65 different alphabets today.
- 6) There are no languages without the [a] sound.
- 7) There were only 30,000 words in Old English. Some people say there are about 600,000 words in Modern English.
- 8) Modern English has the largest vocabulary in the world.

11 Act out dialogues, exchange the news and show your surprise.

Example: — I hear that we are going on a school trip next weekend.
— Is that so? Where are we going?
— To St Petersburg.
— Fancy that!

Unit 3



Living Things Around Us

91


Step One

Step One

Do It Together

1 Listen,  (29), and complete the sentences.

- 1) Darwin was born on
- 2) His father was
- 3) Darwin became a medical student at
- 4) He got interested in geology and
- 5) The expedition on the "Beagle" went to the coasts of
- 6) Darwin died in
- 7) He was buried¹ in

2 Look at the pictures, listen,  (30), and learn the names of these birds.



1) a (sea)gull



2) a pigeon ['piʒən]

¹ he was buried ['berɪd] — он был похоронен





3) a swallow ['swɒləʊ]

4) a nightingale
['naɪtɪŋgeɪl]

5) an ostrich ['ɒstri:tʃ]



6) an owl [aʊl]



7) a parrot ['pærət]

8) a woodpecker
['wʊd,peɪkə]

9) a magpie ['mæɡpaɪ]



10) a crow [krəʊ]



11) a swan [swɒn]

12) a blackbird
['blækbɜ:d]

- which of these birds you have seen and when you saw them
- which of the birds you have never seen
- which birds you have never heard about
- what you know about these birds
 - where they live
 - what colour they are
 - whether they are big/small, strong/weak, etc
 - which of them can sing/talk
- what other birds you know
- which of these birds you may keep as a pet
- which of these birds you keep (kept) as a pet and what it was like



Focus

Известные вам слова **other** и **others** могут употребляться в таких ситуациях, когда речь идёт об определённых людях или предметах. В этих случаях необходимо использование определённого артикля. Ср.:

There are two armchairs in the room. An old lady is sitting in one of them, the other (armchair) is free. (Другой из двух упомянутых.)

Wendy has got two dresses, one is red, the other (dress) is blue. (Другое из имеющихся двух.)

Vera has been to Canada but she has never been to the other English-speaking countries. (Другие; ограниченное число англоговорящих стран, за исключением Канады.)

There were five children in front of the house. One of them was a girl, the other four (the others) were boys. (Все другие члены этой группы, кроме одной девочки.)

Обратите внимание, что сочетание **the other** + существительное во мн. ч. часто заменяется в речи сочетанием **the others**.

the other boys = the others

This apple is mine and the other is yours.

(На тарелке два яблока.)

This apple is mine and the others are yours.

(На тарелке несколько яблок.)



4 What are they?

- 1) This is a magpie. What is the name of the other bird?
- 2) The sparrow is grey. What is the colour of the other birds?
- 3) The woodpecker is in the tree. Where are the other birds?
- 4) The seagulls are eating fish. What food is the other bird eating?
- 5) The nightingale is singing. What are the other birds doing?
- 6) The lark is a small bird. The other bird is big. What is it?

5 Complete the sentences. Use the words from the box.

another, other, the other, others, the others

- 1) Yesterday morning I met two girls. One was Matilda, but I didn't know ... girl.
- 2) Where are the children? — John went to play football, ... went with him.

- 3) There are three cakes on the plate. I'd like to have one and you may take
- 4) There are two cakes on the plate. I'd like to have one and you may take
- 5) This pencil belongs to Betty, ... pencil is mine.
- 6) I am still¹ hungry. May I have ... sandwich, please?
- 7) Some people like it when it is hot, ... like it when it is not.
- 8) Jane's house is on ... side of the street.
- 9) Some books are better than
- 10) We must all know this. I'll call Ann. Will you tell ...?
- 11) Come ... day.
- 12) I wanted to spend our holidays in California but Roland had ... ideas.
- 13) Not now. We'll talk about it some ... time.
- 14) One of the children was Rob, what was ... boy's name?
- 15) One boy fell off his chair and all ... laughed.



FOCUS

Для того чтобы подчеркнуть, что то или иное действие началось в прошлом, происходило какое-то время в прошлом и продолжается в настоящем, в английском языке используют *настоящее перфектное продолженное время (present perfect progressive)*:

have/has been + Ving

I have been living in Moscow for 10 years. — Я живу в Москве 10 лет.

(Действие началось 10 лет тому назад, все эти 10 лет я жила в Москве и сейчас тоже живу в этом городе.)

Mary has been playing the piano for 40 minutes. — Мэри играет на пианино 40 минут.

We have been learning English for four years. — Мы учим английский 4 года.

Помимо указателя **for** в подобных предложениях часто употребляется **since** — с (какого-то времени), а также **all** (day, night, etc).

Sue has been talking on the phone since 2 o'clock. — Сью разговаривает по телефону с двух часов.

It has been raining since morning. — Дождь идёт с утра.

They have been working in the garden all the morning. — Они работают в саду всё утро.

¹ still — все ещё

6 Say what language and how long the children have been learning.



1) Tom — Russian —
for 3 years



6) Sam — Chinese —
since 2003



2) Jenny — French —
for 5 years



7) Brian — Japanese —
since 2000



3) Peter — Latin — for
a year



8) Matilda — Greek —
since 1998



4) Robin — German —
for 2 years



9) Nora — Irish —
since 2004



5) Diana — Italian —
for 4 years



10) William — Spanish —
since 1999

7 It is autumn and it often rains in many cities of Europe. Say how long it has been raining. It is 8 p.m. in each of these cities.

Example: It began raining at 3 p.m. in Rome. It has been raining for 5 hours.

- 1) It began raining at 9 a.m. in Bonn.
- 2) It began raining at 2 p.m. in Berlin.
- 3) It began raining at 11 a.m. in Paris.
- 4) It began raining at 7 p.m. in Madrid.
- 5) It began raining at noon (12 o'clock) in Moscow.
- 6) It began raining at 10 a.m. in St Petersburg.
- 7) It began raining at 4 p.m. in Oslo.
- 8) It began raining at 6 p.m. in Vienna.
- 9) It began raining at 8 a.m. in London.



8 Complete the sentences.

Example: I am tired. I (do) the room for three hours already.
I have been doing the room for three hours already.

- 1) Jenny (draw) since morning.
- 2) Sam (work) there for fifteen years.
- 3) Chris (sleep) for ten hours already.
- 4) Rose and Alan (learn) Spanish for 2 years.
- 5) It (snow) since morning.
- 6) The children (play) tennis for forty minutes.
- 7) The Willers (live) in Leeds all these years.
- 8) Granny (cook) all the morning.
- 9) Ruth (read) for two hours.
- 10) Miss King (teach) since 1987.

9 **A.** Read the text and say what new information you found in it. Choose the right item in the sentences following the text.

Language of Birds

The song of birds is one of the most wonderful sounds. Probably the best singers are the lark and the nightingale. Sometimes when we are out in the country, we hear birds making some


sounds and we may think they are telling one another something. The fact is that birds have their own language, just as many other animals do but their language is different from people's language. We use words and people must know these words, they should learn them. Birds don't learn their language. They are able to sing, "to talk" because they can make sounds and noises. It is an instinct with them. Let's take a chick from its parents so that it can't hear the sounds they make. When the chick grows up, it is able to make the same sounds as its parents. But birds can't LEARN how to sing and how to speak, they can't learn "other languages". Some birds like parrots, crows, jackdaws¹ are talented imitators. They imitate the speech of people and other animals. A lot of birds can learn other birds' songs. For example, if a canary [kə'neəri] grows up with a nightingale, it can learn to sing like a nightingale. But this imitation is not a real language. Birds do not talk as we do.

- a) Birds have their own language.
 - b) Birds don't have their own language.
 - c) Maybe birds have their own language.
- a) Birds have a language that is different from the languages people speak.
 - b) Birds' language is not different, it is the same. They speak as people do.
 - c) Birds' language is more difficult than the language of people.
- a) A chick can't make the same sounds as its parents can.
 - b) A chick can make the same sounds as its parents can.
 - c) A chick can make the same sounds as its parents can if it lives with them.
- a) Birds can learn other "languages" and understand them.
 - b) Birds can learn other "languages" without understanding them.
 - c) Birds can learn only other birds' languages.

¹ a jackdaw ['dʒækdɔ:] — галка



5. a) Birds do not talk.
b) Birds talk as we do.
c) Birds talk but not as we do.

B. Listen,  (31), and read the text again after it.



99

Step One

Do It on Your Own

10 Write what birds they are.

- 1) A small bird that can sing better than any other. It usually sings at night, but it can sing in daytime too.
- 2) It is easy to teach these birds that live in South Africa, Australia and South America some words that people use.
- 3) A bird larger than a sparrow but smaller than a crow. It is usually grey or dark-blue and grey, sometimes white or brown. Often lives in cities.
- 4) A large black and white bird that lives near the sea and has a loud voice.
- 5) A bird which is black-and-white and which often takes to its nest¹ small bright things.
- 6) A small brown singing bird that lives in the field, has its nest in the grass and usually sings early in the morning.
- 7) A bird with a long narrow beak which can make holes² in trees.
- 8) A large beautiful white or sometimes black bird bigger than a duck, with a long neck that lives on rivers and lakes.
- 9) A night bird with large eyes that eats mice and other small animals.

11 What questions can you ask these people?

Example: Mr Harry Parson has been writing a book for eleven months.
— Have you finished your book yet?

- 1) Simon has been looking for a job for five months.
- 2) Ann and Alan have been trying to do their homework for hours.
- 3) Alice has been hoping to buy a new mobile.

¹ a nest [nest] — гнездо

² a hole [həʊl] — дыра

- 4) Ruby King has been thinking of visiting New Zealand for years.
- 5) Roland Scott has been trying to make a successful film for years.
- 6) Bobby has been hoping to find his favourite dog for weeks.
- 7) Nora has been thinking of going to a disco for weeks.
- 8) Alice has been waiting for her friend since morning.

Step Two

Do It Together

1 Listen, (32), and complete the sentences.

- 1) The nightingale lives in England from
- 2) The nightingale never visits
- 3) The nightingale sings at night and
- 4) The nightingale's song is beautiful but its body
- 5) The nightingale builds its home



2 Match the sentences in the two columns.

A.

- 1) I've been reading the book for five minutes.
- 2) I haven't eaten for two days.
- 3) I haven't slept at all this night.
- 4) I've been sitting at home doing nothing all day.
- 5) I haven't had a drink since this morning.
- 6) I have been writing my book for two years.
- 7) I haven't seen John for a long time.
- 8) I have been waiting for Alice for an hour.

B.

- a) My life is not interesting at all.
- b) I'm terribly tired.
- c) I'm very thirsty.
- d) And I already know it is very boring.
- e) I would like to know where he is.
- f) I think I'll finish it soon.
- g) I'm very hungry.
- h) When will she come?

3 Look at the sentences and say how we can form questions in *present perfect progressive*.

?

Has he been watching TV since morning? — Yes, he has.
Has she been writing postcards for two hours? — No, she hasn't.
Has the dog been sleeping for three hours? — Yes, it has.
Have you been sending e-mails since morning? — Yes, I have.
(Yes, we have.)
Have they been talking for an hour? — No, they haven't.
How long have you been staying in this hotel? — Since Thursday.
Since when has it been raining outside? — Since 4 p.m.

101

Step Two

4 Work in pairs. Ask since when (how long) they have been doing it. Your partner will answer the question.



1) Mary and Kate/since afternoon



4) The Robinsons/since morning



2) The children/since last year



5) Julia/since she came home from school



3) Cousin Fred/since yesterday



6) The tourists/since ten in the morning



7) Jack/since 4 o'clock

9) The teachers/
since the end of school

8) The parents/since 5 p.m.



10) It/since yesterday evening

5 How long have they been doing it?

Example: John/write/ 0.5 hour

John has been writing for half an hour.

- 1) Victor/work/1.5 hours
- 2) Robert/watch TV/2.5 hours
- 3) Mr Cook/fish/3 hours
- 4) Jenny/lie in the sun/0.5 hour
- 5) The boys/run/0.5 hour
- 6) The Wenders/drive/1.5 hours
- 7) The children/play football/an hour
- 8) Jim /read a book/0.5 hour
- 9) I/wait for you/an hour

6 Match the names of the animals in English and Russian.

1) медведь, 2) корова, 3) паук, 4) крыса, 5) мотылёк, 6) лиса,
7) улитка, 8) олень, 9) муравей, 10) журавль, 11) кенгуру,
12) лягушка

a) a fox, b) an ant, c) a frog, d) a spider, e) a deer, f) a kangaroo,
g) a rat, h) a moth, i) a bear, j) a snail, k) a cow, l) a crane

7 Look at the pictures. Listen, (33), and learn the names of these animals.



1) a lion ['laɪən]



2) an elephant ['elɪfənt]



3) a hedgehog ['hedʒhɒg]



4) a squirrel ['skwɪrəl]



5) a rabbit ['ræbɪt]



6) a hare [heə]





7) a tiger ['tɪgə]



8) a wolf [wɒlf]



9) a monkey ['mʌŋki]

8 Say which of these animals are wild and which of them are domestic¹.

1) a deer, 2) a kangaroo, 3) a sheep, 4) a pig, 5) an elephant, 6) a horse, 7) a rabbit, 8) a hare, 9) a tiger, 10) a dog, 11) a squirrel, 12) a wolf, 13) a monkey, 14) a lion

9 A. Read the text "Helen Beatrix Potter" and match the paragraphs with their titles. There are four paragraphs but five titles. There is one extra title.



- a) Great Interests
- b) Beginning of a Writer
- c) School Friends

- d) Early Years
- e) Story for a Sick Boy

¹ domestic [də'mestɪk] — домашние

Helen Beatrix Potter

1) Helen Beatrix [ˈbeɪtrɪks] Potter was born on 6th July 1866 in London. She was an only daughter of rather rich parents. She did not go to school but had classes at home.

2) Beatrix was fond of two things. They were animals and drawing. She had a lot of small pets at home: a family of snails, mice, a rabbit, bats¹ and a hedgehog. From early childhood she did hundreds of drawings of plants and animals and learned to do it very well. She often illustrated her letters to child friends with little animal drawings and told them stories about these animals.

3) One day in 1893 she wrote to a little boy called Noel Moor. The boy was ill and she wanted to please him and humour him². The letter began with the words: "I don't know what to write to you so I shall tell you a story about four little rabbits whose names were Flopsy, Mopsy, Cottontail and Peter." In this letter she told the story of Peter Rabbit and illustrated it with lovely little drawings.

4) Eight years later Beatrix Potter remembered the letter and the story and wrote her now famous children's book "The Tale of Peter Rabbit". The book was very successful and Beatrix Potter became a professional children's writer. For many years now children in England and other countries have enjoyed her stories about mice, kittens³, ducks, squirrels, hedgehogs and rabbits. And her perfect illustrations make her books even better.

B. Listen, (34), and read the text again after it.



105

Step Two

10 Read the text about Beatrix Potter again and say as much as you can about:

- her family
- her interests
- her stories
- her first famous book

¹ a bat — летучая мышь

² to please him and humour [ˈhju:mə] him — *зд.*: порадовать и развеселить его

³ a kitten — котёнок

Do It on Your Own

11 Complete these sentences and translate them into Russian.

- 1) I (wait) for you for an hour and a half. Why have you come so late?
- 2) Jenny (live) in this place since 1960. She knows everybody here.
- 3) Peter (learn) Spanish for half a year only. His pronunciation isn't very good.
- 4) Rose and her husband (build) their garage all the summer and they haven't finished it yet.
- 5) My parents (travel) about the USA for two weeks already. They are coming back soon.
- 6) The children (watch) television for an hour and a half already. I think I'll take them for a walk.
- 7) Ruth (wash up) since after dinner. There are few dirty dishes left.

12 Work in pairs. Complete these questions and let your partner answer them.

- 1) How long you (do) these exercises?
(1.5 hours)
- 2) Since when you (paint) the picture?
(autumn)
- 3) How long she (wait) for her lunch?
(0.5 hour)
- 4) Since when they (grow) these plants?
(May)
- 5) How long you (stay) at this hotel?
(3 days)

13 Write the same in English.

Полчаса, полтора часа, пол-яблока, полтора банана, полтора месяца, две с половиной недели, первая (вторая) половина столетия, три с половиной минуты.

Do It Together

1 Five people are speaking about animals that live in Africa. Look at the pictures, listen, (35), and say what animals they mean. There are two extra pictures.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.

2 Say how long these people have been doing it.



1) George/1.5 hours



2) Greg/0.5 hour



3) Molly and Kate/2.5 hours





4) Jenny and Alice/
2.5 weeks



5) William and Sam/
0.5 year



6) Frank/
since Sunday



7) Rose/since 2004



8) Mr Robinson/since yesterday



Focus

1. В предложениях с использованием времени **present perfect progressive** момент, когда действие началось в прошлом, может быть обозначен придаточным предложением.

Jane has been watching TV since mum came home.

Colin has been playing on the computer since he returned.

В этом случае в придаточных предложениях всегда употребляется **past simple**.

2. Периоды времени, в течение которых длится действие, могут быть обозначены следующими словосочетаниями: **all day**, **all night**, **all the afternoon** или **for a long time**.

Helen has been talking on the phone **all the afternoon**.

Bob has been working on the computer **all day**.

3 Say how long they have been using these things.

Example: Mr Stubbs /to drive his car/he/to buy it/in 1999

Mr Stubbs has been driving his car since he bought it in 1999.

1) Julia/to wear her shoes/she/to buy them/last summer

2) Boris/to read this book/he/to borrow it/from the library

- 3) Chris/to take pictures/his father/to give him the camera
- 4) Brian and Mary/to live in this house/they/to come to town
- 5) The Davidsons/to play the piano/1999
- 6) Bill/to ride his bike/he/to get it as a birthday present
- 7) They/to use the garage/they/to build it
- 8) Jim/to drink from this cup/I/to give it to him two years ago



Focus

109

Step Three



Reflexive pronouns, Ⓢ (36) (Возвратные местоимения)

У всех личных местоимений в английском языке есть соответствующие возвратные местоимения. Они имеют окончания **-self** в единственном числе и **-selves** во множественном числе.

Личные местоимения	Возвратные местоимения
I	myself [maɪ'self]
you (ты)	yourself [jɔ:'self]
he	himself [hɪm'self]
she	herself [hɜ:'self]
it	itself [ɪt'self]
we	ourselves [aʊə'selvz]
you (вы)	yourselves [jɔ:'selvz]
they	themselves [ðəm'selvz]

myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself } сам(а) себя
 ourselves, yourselves, themselves } сами себя

- 1) The boy found himself in a big room. — Мальчик очутился в большой комнате.
- 2) Have you made the cake yourself? — Вы сами приготовили торт?
- 3) He never speaks of himself. — Он никогда не говорит о себе.

Возвратные местоимения, как правило, не употребляются при следующих глаголах: **to wash**, **to dress**, **to bathe** [beɪð] (купаться), **to shave** (бриться), **to hide** (прятаться).

Ср. также:

Она плохо себя чувствует. — She feels ill.


4 What does it mean in Russian?

- 1) Look at yourself! Your face is dirty.
- 2) Pam dressed and went downstairs to the kitchen.
- 3) They never speak of themselves.
- 4) Mary always does the shopping herself.
- 5) Bob is very small. He can't open the door himself.
- 6) I don't know anything about it

myself. 7) You yourselves heard it, didn't you? 8) We'll go there ourselves and see what is going on. 9) I enjoyed the music but didn't like the play¹ itself. 10) Think yourself, I won't tell you.

5 Complete the sentences. Use reflexive pronouns where necessary.

- 1) I can't tell you what to do, you must decide for
- 2) Nobody helped him. He did everything
- 3) The child was ill yesterday. How is she feeling ... today?
- 4) He got up early, washed ... and shaved ... and at 7 o'clock he was ready to leave the house.
- 5) I think that they understand everything
- 6) Jenny looked at ... and saw that her skirt and blouse were not very clean.
- 7) Don't go to the shops, I'll buy everything
- 8) The day was hot and the girls decided to bathe ... in the river.
- 9) Look at this new chair. We've made it Isn't it beautiful?
- 10) They don't buy bread in the shop. They make it

6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen,  (37), and repeat.



A.

include [m'klu:d] — включать
including [m'klu:diŋ] — включающая
species ['spi:ʃi:z] — образец, образцы
discover [dis'klʌvə] — обнаружить, открыть
discovery [dis'klʌv(ə)ri] — открытие
air [eə] — воздух
soil [sɔɪl] — почва, земля
root [ru:t] — корень

insect ['ɪnsɛkt] — насекомое
move [mu:v] — двигаться
common ['kɒmən] — 1) общий; 2) часто встречающийся, обычный
earth [ɜ:θ] (*also* Earth) — 1) земля, земной шар; 2) Земля (*планета*)
desert ['dezət] — пустыня
breathe [bri:ð] — дышать
support [sə'pɔ:t] — 1) поддерживать; 2) содержать

B.

include: to include sth/sb, to include on the list. The class of twenty includes seven girls. Did you include me when you made the list?

¹ a play [pleɪ] — пьеса

including: I have seen all his films including the last.
species (*pl.* species): a tropical species. There are more than 120 species of birds in the National Park.
discover: to discover sth. To discover means to find out something for the first time. Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492. Fleming discovered penicillin [*pen'sɪlɪn*].
discovery: to make a discovery. Mr Johnson made his discovery when he was very young.
air: cold air, fresh air, in the air, by air = by plane. I'd like to open the window, I need some air. The boy jumped into the air.
soil: to grow in (the) soil. Plants grow well in good soil.
root: A root is the part of a plant or a tree that is in the soil.
insect: An insect is a small animal with six legs. Ants and bees are insects.
move: to move fast (slowly), to move in = to move into a flat (a house), to move something. It is cold in the room, move your chair nearer the fireplace. We're going to move in next week.
common: 1) a common language, to have sth in common. The English and Americans have a common language. I have a lot in common with my brother. 2) Double-deckers are common in London. Rabbits and foxes are common in Britain.
earth: The Earth is a planet where we live. The Moon goes round the Earth. The astronauts returned successfully from the Moon to the Earth.
desert: the Gobi Desert, the Sahara Desert. There are a lot of deserts in Africa.
breathe: to breathe in, to breathe out. Fish cannot breathe out of water. Breathe in deeply.
support: to support a family, to support children, to support a plan. Her father supported her till she was twenty five.

7 Complete the sentences with your new words (see Ex. 6).

1) I know that my friends will always s... me. 2) This place looks like a d..., there are no plants growing here. 3) Bees and ants, as people think, are i... that live in big groups. 4) Doctors say it is very good to b... sea 5) Rabbits and hares look nearly the same, but in fact they are two different s... . 6) The 15th century was the time of great geographical d...s. 7) My favourite subjects i... biology and chemistry. 8) Cactuses ['kæktəsɪs] can grow in dry s..., practically without any water. 9) At home I d... all my fami-

ly waiting for me. 10) It's not always easy for me to find a c... language with Paul, I think he is rather stupid. 11) The Browns are planning to m... from Glasgow to Edinburgh. 12) How many oceans are there on the E...? 13) Plants get their food and water from the s... with the help of r...s. 14) Planes are a lot heavier than a... but they can fly.



Focus

Обратите внимание на то, что для обозначения понятия земля в английском языке используется несколько слов:

Earth — Земля (*планета*)

land — земля (*суша*)

soil — земля (*почва*)

The planet Earth is so beautiful!

After two weeks on the sea we saw land at last.

She put some soil in the pot and planted a rose.

8 Which word to use — *Earth, land or soil*?


1) Mrs Willer prepared the ... for the flowers. 2) Is the ... nearer to the Moon than Mars is? 3) The children planted the tulips in the 4) "Water, water and water everywhere. When shall we see ...?" 5) Mr Parson is interested in the geography of the 6) The captain wanted to walk on dry 7) She planted the forget-me-nots in wet sandy 8) After working at sea for eight years, I got a job on

9 A. Read the text and say in what way animals are different from plants.

Animals and Plants

As scientists say, an animal is any living thing (including people) that is not a plant. No one knows how many different species of wild plants and animals there are on our planet. People discover hundreds of new kinds every year. In what way are animals different from plants? This question is not always easy to answer. Animals and plants get their food differently: animals eat plants or other animals, while plants get their food from the air and soil with the help of their leaves and roots. But we know that some plants catch and "eat" insects. Also animals can move about while plants grow in the same place but there are some plants that can travel and some animals that never leave their place. As you see plants and animals have very much in common.

There are more than 300,000 different species of plants on earth. Some plants grow very tall and live a very long life. Other plants are so tiny that you can see them only through a microscope ['maɪkrəskəʊp]. The same is true about animals. You can find plants and animals in the oceans and deserts, in mountains and in cold tundra ['tʌndrə] plains. When people first learned to cultivate ['kʌltɪveɪt] plants and domesticate [də'mestɪkeɪt] animals, our civilization [ˌsɪvəlaɪ'zeɪʃn] began. We can't live without them. Plants are able to use sunlight to build themselves up. They use carbon dioxide¹ and "breathe out" life-giving oxygen². They support life on the planet.

B. Listen,  (38), and read the text again after it.



10 Answer the questions about the text "Animals and Plants".

- 1) What do living things include?
- 2) Can we say that we have studied all the plants and animals that live on our planet?
- 3) In what way are plants and animals different?
- 4) Why is it not always true?
- 5) The text says that some plants are tiny and some are very big. Is that true about animals? Can you give examples?
- 6) Why can't we live without plants and animals? In what ways do we use them?

Do It on Your Own

11 Complete the sentences. Use *for* or *since*.

- 1) The boys are tired. They have been playing football ... an hour and a half.
- 2) Alex has been talking on the phone ... I came home.
- 3) The telephone has been ringing ... about a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?
- 4) Mr Williams has been writing his book ... half a year and hasn't finished it yet.
- 5) People have been working on this ... the beginning of the century.
- 6) John has been washing his car ... nine o'clock this morning.
- 7) Sarah has been waiting for her sister ... a long time.

¹ carbon dioxide [ˌkɑːbən daɪ'ɒksaɪd] — углекислый газ

² oxygen ['ɒksɪdʒ(ə)n] — кислород

12 Write the same differently.

Example: No one helps Danny to grow vegetables.
 Danny grows vegetables himself.

- 1) No one helps me to do my homework. 2) No one helps Anna to learn Spanish. 3) No one helps the children to decorate their classroom. 4) No one helps Mr and Mrs Page to plant the trees. 5) No one helps Jason to move the desks in the office. 6) No one helps us to make porridge. 7) No one helps them to make photos for their album. 8) No one helps the bee to make honey.

Step Four

Do It Together

1 Listen, (39), and choose the right item.

- a) Sally is fifteen this year.
 b) Sally is going to be fifteen this year.
- a) Sally is thinking about her career.
 b) Sally is not thinking about her career.
- a) Sally goes to the park to watch birds all by herself.
 b) Sally goes to the park to watch birds with her friends.
- a) Sally knows a lot of species of birds living all over the world.
 b) Sally knows a lot of species of birds living in Britain.
- a) Sally loves reading books about plants and animals.
 b) Sally loves reading books about birds and animals.
- a) Sally's teacher gives her books about animals to read.
 b) Sally's teachers give her books about animals to read.
- a) Bears and wolves do not live in Great Britain anymore.
 b) There are a lot of bears and wolves in Britain now.
- a) Sally gave a talk on British birds.
 b) Sally gave a talk on British animals.
- a) Sally is going to university to do biology.
 b) Sally is thinking about going to university to do biology.

2 Think of the beginnings to these sentences. Use *present perfect progressive*.

Example: ... since I bought it.
 I have been watching this video since I bought it.



- 1) ... since I came back.
- 2) ... since I began learning English.
- 3) ... since we moved in.
- 4) ... since I made it.
- 5) ... since my mother showed me how to do it.
- 6) ... since my friends gave it to me.
- 7) ... since my parents bought it for me.
- 8) ... since my cousin left.



Focus

1. Для того чтобы описать действие, которое началось в прошлом и длится до сих пор, глаголами, которые не употребляются в продолженных временах (**to know, to have, to be, to want, to love**), употребляется **present perfect**.

I have been here for 3 days already. — Я здесь уже три дня.

How long have you been here? — Сколько времени ты находишься здесь?

I have had this camera for years. — Этот фотоаппарат у меня уже давно (много лет).

She has known Boris all her life. — Она знает Бориса всю жизнь.

I have always wanted to visit London. — Мне всегда хотелось побывать в Лондоне.

I have always loved you. — Я всегда тебя любил(а).

2. В некоторых случаях время **present perfect progressive** употребляется, чтобы описать действия, которые начались в прошлом и только что закончились, при этом налицо признаки данных действий.

- a) — Why are you so dirty?
— We have been playing football.
- b) — Why is the kitchen so messy, Rose?
— I've been cooking.

3 How long have they been doing these jobs?



1) Mrs Wenders



2) James



3) Jim



4) William, Bob



5) Patrick



6) Diana

1) since 2001, 2) for ten years, 3) since he finished school, 4) for three years, 5) since 1998, 6) for a year and a half

4 How long have they had these?



1) The Croppers



2) Miss Simpson



3) Megan



4) Harry



5) Alan



6) Alice

1) for three years, 2) for years, 3) since last summer, 4) since his parents bought it, 5) since last month, 6) for two weeks

5 A. How long have they known them?

Example: Dr Cross — Mr Harrison — since 2000
Dr Cross has known Mr Harrison since 2000.

- 1) Rose Smith — John Parker — for 6 months
- 2) Simon — Alan Willer — all his life
- 3) Mrs Parson — Roland Scott — since she visited Britain
- 4) Roger Gordon — Tony Dobson — for two years
- 5) Miss Hook — Fanny Devlin — for years
- 6) Walter — Sam — for 3 days

B. Say what they have always wanted to do.

- 1) Roy — to become a journalist
- 2) Sarah — to learn Spanish
- 3) Ann — to visit Canada
- 4) Tom — to write a poem
- 5) David and Chris — to go to the Great Lakes
- 6) The Lovedays — to move in a new house

6 Match the sentences in the two columns.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1) Why are your hands red and green? | a) I have been working all day. |
| 2) Why are you so tired? | b) I have been running all the way. |
| 3) Why are your shoes wet? | c) I have been out in the street for 3 hours. |
| 4) Why are your eyes red? | d) I have been cooking dinner. |
| 5) Why is the kitchen so messy? | e) I have been watering the flowers. |
| 6) Why are you breathing so fast? | f) I have been sunbathing. |
| 7) Why is your face so red? | g) I have been crying. |
| 8) Why are you so cold? | h) I have been painting a picture. |

7 A. Read the text and match the paragraphs with their titles. There's one extra title.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| a) Common Birds | d) Common Insects |
| b) Common Animals | e) National Symbols |
| c) Common Plants | |

Flora and Fauna¹ of the British Isles

1) The warm and wet climate [ˈklaɪmɪt] of Great Britain is very good for plants. That's why the country looks like a big beautiful garden.

Centuries ago there were a lot of forests on the British Isles, but now you can find big forests only in a few parts of the country — the north of Scotland and the south-east and south-west of England. The most common trees in England are oaks, beeches and elms while Scotland has a lot of pines, firs and birches.

2) The fauna, or animal life, on the British Isles is like in the north-west of Europe. Many larger animals such as bears and wolves don't live on the British Isles anymore, but there are a lot of smaller animals: foxes, rabbits, hares and hedgehogs. Deer live in the forests of Scotland and England. There are also different kinds of fish, snakes, lizards, frogs, butterflies and dragonflies.

3) More than two hundred species of birds live on the British Isles and about two hundred kinds are visitors of the place. Many of them are songbirds, in spring the land rings with their singing. The most common are blackbirds and sparrows. A lot of waterbirds — swans, ducks, geese and gulls — live on the lakes and rivers and on the sea coasts of Great Britain.



¹ flora [ˈflɔːrə] and fauna [ˈfɔːnə] — флора и фауна

4) It may be interesting that the robin, one of Britain's common birds, has become the national bird of the country. There are also plant symbols ['sɪmblz] of the country: the red rose is the national emblem ['embləm] of England, the thistle ['θɪsl] is the national emblem of Scotland, the yellow daffodil and the leek are emblems of Wales and the shamrock ['ʃæmrɒk] is the emblem of Ireland.



B. Listen, (40), and read the text again after it.

8 Listen, (41), and repeat these names of plants and animals.



a koala



a grizzly bear



a flamingo



an opossum



a crocodile



an alligator



a coyote



an anteater



a polar bear



an evergreen



a water lily



an edelweiss



a palm

9 Speak about the fauna in these countries.

Country	Common animals	Common birds
The USA	black bears grizzly ['grɪzli] bears deer mountain sheep } in the mountains mountain goats } rabbits hares foxes opossums [ə'pɒsəmz] grey and red squirrels snakes crocodiles alligators ['ælɪgətəz] } in Florida	woodpeckers owls swallows sparrows geese ducks magpies flamingos (in Florida)
Canada	brown bears } in the north black bears } grizzly bears polar ['pəʊlə] bears buffaloes ['bʌfələʊz] wolves coyotes ['kɔɪəʊts] deer mountain goats	Canada geese ducks owls sparrows magpies

Country	Common animals	Common birds
Australia	kangaroos [ˌkæŋgəˈruːz] buffaloes rabbits crocodiles dingoes [ˈdɪŋɡəʊz] koala bears anteaters	parrots other Australian birds
Russia	?	?



10 Where do these plants grow?

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) wild flowers | a) in the north/south (of)... |
| 2) firs | b) on dry soil |
| 3) pines | c) on wet soil |
| 4) maples ¹ | d) on sandy soil |
| 5) oaks | e) in the forest |
| 6) birches | f) in the valley |
| 7) beeches | g) high in the mountains |
| 8) evergreens | h) in the water |
| 9) palms ² | i) everywhere |
| 10) water lilies | |
| 11) forget-me-nots | |
| 12) grasses | |
| 13) edelweisses | |

11 Listen to the song, (42), and sing along.

I've Been Working on the Railroad

(American song)

I've been working on the <u>railroad</u>	железная дорога
All the <u>live-long</u> day.	весь день напролёт
I've been working on the railroad	
Just to <u>pass</u> the time away.	провести время
Can't you hear <u>the whistle blowing</u> ?	как свистит свисток

¹ a maple [ˈmeɪpl] — клён

² a palm [pɑːm] — пальма

Rise up so early in the morn!
 Can't you hear the captain shouting,
 "Dinah, blow your horn!"

Dinah, won't you blow,
 Dinah, won't you blow,
 Dinah, won't you blow your horn,
 _____ your horn?

Dinah, won't you blow,
 Dinah, won't you blow,
 Dinah, won't you blow your horn,
 _____ your horn?

Someone's in the kitchen with Dinah,
 Someone's in the kitchen I know!
 Someone's in the kitchen with Dinah
Strumming on the old banjo
 And singing:
 Fee, fie, fiddle-yie-o
 Fee, fie, fiddle-yie o-o-o-o,
 Fee, fie, fiddle-yie-o
 Strumming on the old banjo!

поднимайся рано утром
 как кричит капитан
 подуй в свой рожок

бренчит на старом
 банджо

Do It on Your Own

12 Write what country they are symbols of.



1. _____



2. _____



3. _____



4. _____



5. _____



6. _____



7. _____



8. _____

13 Complete the situations. Use the verbs in brackets in the right verb forms.

- 1) The boys (play) football now. They (be) tired. They (play) football for an hour and a half.
- 2) Tom (begin) talking on the phone an hour ago. I think he should finish. He (talk) on the phone for an hour already.
- 3) Roy came to see the dentist at nine o'clock. It (be) 9:30 now. Roy (wait) for the doctor since 9:00 a.m.
- 4) Colin (become) a professor in 1998. He (work) at the university since he (become) a professor.
- 5) The Greens (move) to Canada last summer. They (live) in Canada now. They (live) in Canada for about a year.

123

Step Five

Step Five

1 Listen, (43), and say which sentences are true and which are false.

- 1) Ostriches have no wings.
- 2) Ostriches can run as fast as horses.
- 3) Ostriches live in Asia, Africa and South America.
- 4) Ostriches hate water because they can get themselves wet.
- 5) Ostriches eat only plants and nothing else.
- 6) Ostriches live only in the wild.
- 7) Not everything that people believe about ostriches is true.



2 Work in pairs. Act out dialogues.

Example: — What have you been doing?
— I've been eating apples.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.

3 It is 9 p.m. in each of these cities. Say how long it has been raining/snowing in these cities.

Example: It has been snowing in New York since 8 p.m.
It has been snowing in New York for an hour.





1) since 9 a.m.



2) since 11 a.m.



3) since morning



4) since 3 p.m.



5) since 4 p.m.



6) since noon

4 Act out the dialogues, then make your own dialogues with the words on the right and act them out too.

1) — I like this dress. Is it new?

— Oh, no! I've had it for years.

2) — I love these jeans. Are they new?

— Oh, no! I've had them for years.

3) — Your blouse is so beautiful! Is it new?

— Oh, no! I've been wearing it for years.

bag, hat, scarf, coat, belt, umbrella

trousers, socks, sandals, pyjamas, shoes, boots, shorts

coat, raincoat, jacket, gown, scarf



Обратите внимание на различия времён **present perfect** и **present perfect progressive**.

Present Perfect

I.

1) I have read the book.

2) He has written a letter.

(Действие произошло. Когда конкретно — не важно, налицо результат, связь с настоящим.)

II.

I have flown an airplane many times. (Действие происходило один или несколько раз за определённый период времени и до момента речи.)

III.

I have liked such movies ever since I was a child.

(Действие началось в прошлом и длится до сих пор. Действие выражено с помощью глаголов, не употребляющихся в продолженной форме.)

IV.

С глаголами *to live*, *to work* в предложениях с *since* и *for* оба времени практически взаимозаменяемы.

I have lived here since 2003.

He has worked at this hospital for ten years.

Present Perfect Progressive

1) I have been writing a book since July.

2) He has been writing a letter for half an hour.

(Действие началось в прошлом, продолжалось в прошлом и длится до сих пор.)

Your eyes are red. Have you been crying?

(Действие только что закончилось, признаки его налицо.)

I have been living here since 2003.

He has been working at this hospital for ten years.

5 Present perfect or present perfect progressive?

1) It (snow) all day. When will it stop? 2) Hi, Tom. I (see, not) you for weeks. What (you, do) all this time? 3) I (write) to them three times, but I (get, not) any answer yet. 4) Bill (be) here since the 5th of November. 5) I (meet) Mrs Gordon many times this week. 6) Colin, you (miss) already very many classes. 7) I (phone) Diana for three hours already, but she is not at home yet. 8) It's

11 p.m. I (work) on the computer since six and I (finish, not) yet.
9) I always (want) to make a tour of Spain. 10) The telephone (ring) for almost a minute. Why doesn't someone answer it?



Focus

Возвратные местоимения часто употребляются после предлога **by** для того, чтобы подчеркнуть, что действие выполнено самостоятельно.

He did it all *by himself*. — Он сделал это абсолютно самостоятельно.

She lives *by herself*. — Она живёт совершенно одна.

Susie and Kate made the dress all *by themselves*. — Сьюзи и Кейт сшили платье абсолютно самостоятельно.

127

Step Five

6 Answer the questions.

1) Do you usually make breakfast yourself or does your mother or somebody else do it for you? 2) Do you usually do English exercises all by yourself or does anybody help you? 3) Have you ever driven a car yourself? 4) Do you live all by yourself or with your parents? 5) Did you learn to read yourself or did anybody teach you? 6) Do people speak to themselves? Do you speak to yourself? Why does it usually happen?

7 A. Read these texts about flowers and say what months you associate¹ them with and why.

1) The snowdrop is as white as snow and grows when snow still lies in the forests. You can try to grow snowdrops in your garden too.



2) This month's flower is the primrose ['prɪmrəʊz]. The primrose may have many different colours: white, yellow, red, pink, orange and purple. This little flower looking like a star is one of the earliest spring flowers. They are common in Europe, Asia and North America.



3) The flower of this month is the daffodil which grows and blooms early in spring. It has been a garden favourite for centuries. It has long leaves and bright yellow petals². It belongs

¹ to associate [ə'səʊʃieɪt] — ассоциировать

² a petal ['petl] — лепесток

to the narcissus family. In Greek mythology, Narcissus was a young man who could love nobody else but himself. So gods¹ got angry with him and turned him into a flower.

4) Water lilies grow in ponds and lakes. These flowers are large. Some are deep yellow, some are pinkish white and some are blue or even purple. The best-known water lily is *Victoria Regia*. The leaves of this plant grow over a meter and a half in diameter. Its big pink-white flowers open in the evening.

5) The chrysanthemum [krɪ'sænthɪməm] is one of the oldest flowers people grow. It has been grown in Japan for nearly two thousand years and is the national flower of that island country. Travellers brought it to Europe in the 17th century. This lovely flower can be white, yellow, red, purple or pink. Chrysanthemums are welcome flowers because they grow and open when there are not many other flowers around.

6) This sweet flower is probably everyone's favourite. Roses please us with their beauty from June to September and in England, whose emblem they are, you can sometimes see roses opening in November or even December. The most common colours are red, pink, white and yellow. If you want to say that a job or a situation includes some unpleasant things, you often say "it is not all roses".



B. What is your favourite flower? What is it like?

poppy ['pɒpi] — мак; **lilac** ['laɪlək] — сирень; **pansy** ['pænsi] — анютины глазки; **daisy** ['deɪzi] — ромашка, маргаритка; **dandelion** ['dændɪləɪən] — одуванчик; **carnation** [kɑ:'neɪʃn] — гвоздика; **cornflower** ['kɔ:nflaʊə] — василёк; **bluebell** ['blu:bel] — колокольчик; **tiger lily** ['lɪli] — тигровая лилия; **sunflower** ['sʌnflaʊə] — подсолнух

¹ gods — боги

**B** Learn what people say on special days in English.

Congratulations! [kən,græʃju'leɪʃnz] — Поздравляю!
 Congratulations to you! — Поздравляю вас!
 My heartiest congratulations to you! — Сердечно поздравляю вас!
 Happy Birthday!
 Many happy returns of the day! } Поздравляю с днём рождения!
 Best wishes for your birthday! — Наилучшие пожелания вам!
 Take my best wishes! — Примите мои наилучшие пожелания!
 I wish you luck! — Желаю удачи!
 Good luck! }
 All the best! } Всего наилучшего!
 May all your dreams come true! — Пусть сбудутся все ваши мечты!
 Enjoy yourself! }
 Have fun! } Желаю хорошо повеселиться!
 Have a good time! — Желаю хорошо провести время!
 Have a nice day! — Хорошего тебе дня!
 Happy New Year! — Счастливого Нового года! С Новым годом!
 Merry Christmas! — С Рождеством!

What Do You Think?**9** Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.

- 1) God made the country, and man made the town.
- 2) Actions speak louder than words.
- 3) Little strokes fell great oaks.

**Focus**

1. Обратите внимание, что в ответ почти на все поздравления и пожелания обычно говорят:

The same to you. Thank you. Thanks (a lot). Thank you very much.

2. В ответ на поздравление с Новым годом обычно говорят "Happy New Year!".

— Happy New Year, Linda! — Happy New Year, John!

3. Поздравляя кого-либо с другим праздником, англичане чаще всего пользуются выражением **Happy + something** или **Greetings on...**

Happy Teacher's Day! — Поздравляю с Днём учителя!

Happy Holiday! — Поздравляю с праздником!
 Happy Mother's Day! — Поздравляю с Днём матери!
 Greetings on Women's Day! — Поздравляю с Днём 8 Марта!
 Greetings on the Russian Army Day! — Поздравляю с Днём защитника Отечества!
 4. Выражения со словом **congratulations**, а также глагол **to congratulate** используют только тогда, когда поздравляют кого-то с успехами и личными достижениями, например: I know you've finished school. My congratulations!

10 Complete these dialogues and then act them out.

- 1) — I'm so glad you've become a student. I know it was not easy.
—
- 2) — Happy New Year, dear!
— ..., mom!
- 3) — Goodbye, Fred. I wish you luck and happiness and success!
—
- 4) — I'm going on holiday tomorrow.
— Bye, George.
- 5) — Well, John, I hear you're fifteen today.
—
—
- 6) — So you're ready for the party. You look wonderful, dear.
—

11 Work in pairs, greet or congratulate one another on:

- | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a) a birthday; | f) St Valentine's Day; |
| b) Mother's Day; | g) one of you getting a diploma; |
| c) the New Year; | h) one of you going away on holiday; |
| d) Easter Day; | i) one of you getting a new job. |
| e) Christmas; | |

Do It on Your Own

12 Write the same in English.

A. Храбрый заяц, удивительные насекомые, глупый страус, умная обезьяна, ленивый медведь, белая ромашка, большой дуб, славная белочка, вечнозелёная ель, высокая сосна, тонкая берёза, голубые незабудки, маленький соловей, прекрасная сирень, яркий подсолнух, синий василёк, красная гвоздика, сильный слон, могучий лев, английские дубы.



The ABC of Ecology¹

Step One

Do It Together

- 1 Listen, (44), and say when these people are talking.

1 January, 14 February, 30 April, 2 September, 25 December,
5 October

- 2 Listen, (45), and sing along.

Green Fields

(by Terry Gilkyson, Rich Dehr, Frank Miller)

Once there were green fields kissed by
the sun,

Once there were valleys where rivers
used to run,

Once there was blue sky with white
clouds high above,

Once they were part of an everlasting
love.

We were the lovers who strolled through
green fields.

однажды

когда-то текли

в вышине

вечная

бродили

¹ ecology [i'kɒlədʒi] — экология

Green fields are gone now, parched by
the sun,
Gone from the valleys where rivers used
to run,
Gone with the cold wind that swept in-
to my heart,
Gone with the lovers who let their
dreams depart.
Where are the green fields that we
used to roam?
I'll never know what made you run
away.
How can I keep searching when dark
clouds hide the day.
I only know there's nothing here for me,
Nothing in this wide world left for me to
see.
But I'll keep on waiting till you return,
I'll keep on waiting till the day you learn.
You can't be happy while your heart's
on the roam.
You can't be happy until you bring it
home.
Home to the green fields and me once
again.

исчезли
выжженные

проник в моё
сердце
упустили свою
мечту

когда-то гуляли
заставило тебя
уехать
продолжать искать
скрывают

ничего не осталось

буду продолжать
ждать, till = until

блуждает




Focus

Запомните третью форму следующих неправильных глаголов:

blow — blew — blown [blaʊn] — дуть
draw — drew — drawn [draʊn] — рисовать
fly — flew — flown [flaʊn] — летать
grow — grew — grown [grəʊn] — расти
wear — wore — worn [wɔːn] — носить

- 3 Choose the right form of the verbs to complete the sentences: *past simple* or *present perfect*.

1) What Nick (wear) at the party? — I don't know. I (see, not) him then. 2) Look! Bob (draw) a very good picture. I like it. 3) John (fly) to Paris yesterday. 4) Jane is not in Moscow. She (fly) to St Petersburg. 5) Mrs Stubbs (grow) beautiful forget-me-nots in her garden last spring. 6) My little granddaughter (grow) a very big tomato. Would you like to look at it? 7) How long you (wear) this dress? — I don't remember. I know that I (wear) it for years. 8) A cold wind is blowing out in the street. It (blow) since morning. 9) Have you ever (fly) a kite? 10) Mr Dixon (fly) to Canada last week. 11) How quickly these flowers (grow)! 12) Look, what animal your cousin (draw)!

- 4 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen,  (46), and repeat.

A.

include [ɪn'klu:d] — включать
influence ['ɪnfluəns] — влиять
study ['stʌdi] — изучать
between [bi'twi:n] — между (двумя)
relation [rɪ'leɪʃn] — 1) отношение; 2) родственник
each [i:tʃ] — каждый
environment [ɪn'vaɪənmənt] — окружающая среда
surround [sə'raʊnd] — окружать

health [helθ] — здоровье
collect [kə'lekt] — собирать
population [ˌpɒpjʊ'leɪʃn] — население, популяция
number ['nʌmbə] — 1) количество; 2) число
size [saɪz] — размер
behaviour [bi'heɪvjə] — поведение
nowadays ['naʊədəɪz] — в наши дни
survive [sə'vaɪv] — выжить

B.

influence: to influence people, to influence somebody's life. His speech influenced the students. Computers have influenced the world of science a lot.

study: to study to be a journalist, to study music, to study science at school. She often goes to the library to study there.

between: between the two streets, between you and me. The pencil lay between the books.

relation: our relations, their relations. What are the relations between these countries? In relation to sth. I have a lot (nothing) to say in relation to this problem.



each: each species, each boy, to speak to each other, to know each other. We often send e-mails to each other.

environment: an unhappy home environment. We should always think of our environment.

surround: to surround a garden, to surround a playground. The air that surrounds us is not always good for breathing.

surroundings: He was happy to be at home again in his usual surroundings.

health: poor health, good health, to be in good health. My granny is rather old but she is in good health.

healthy: healthy surroundings, healthy food.

collect: to collect pictures, to collect dolls, to collect postcards. Some children love collecting different things.

collection: a wonderful collection of books.

population: the population of the city, the population of the country. What is the population of London? Tanzania's elephant population is about 55,000.

number: 1) a/the number of animals, a/the number of birds. I have a number of English books at home. The number of children in our family is three. 2) 5 is a number, 397 and 78 are also numbers.

size: the size of a room, the size of a vocabulary. Your flat is the same size as mine. What size shoes do you wear? — Size 36 (shoes).

behaviour: bad behaviour, the pupils' behaviour, to watch animals' behaviour, problem behaviour. Ann was sick of her brother's behaviour.

nowadays: A lot of people travel by air nowadays. People use computers everywhere nowadays.

survive: to survive the fire, to survive in the ocean. He survived in the desert for a week on biscuits and water.

5 Say the same differently. Use the new words.

Example: Jenny buys all the interesting postcards she can find. It is her hobby. Jenny collects postcards.

1) John spends a lot of time learning geography. 2) These two countries have very good contacts. 3) The science that studies how living things live in relation to each other and their environment is one of the most important sciences nowadays. 4) These days people work a lot on computers. 5) People should think a lot about the surroundings in which they live. 6) Mr Robinson de-

cided to put a high wall around the castle. 7) Why is it important for children to eat good food? 8) What is the number of people who live in London? 9) Julia has got a lot of good books at home. 10) I'd like to ask you some questions.

- 6 A.** There are words that sound alike in many languages and mean the same. We call them "international" words. Read the text and find 12 international words in it.

What Is Ecology?

No living thing or group of living things can live and grow in isolation [ˌaɪsəˈleɪʃn]. All organisms, both plants and animals, need¹ energy to develop and all species of living things influence the lives of others. Ecology is a science. It studies how plants, animals and other living things live in relation to each other and to their environment. People have always studied living things in their natural [ˈnætʃ(ə)rəl] environment, in other words, they have always studied the air, the water, the soil and all the other things that surround a person, animal or plant. The environment can influence the growth and health of living things. Ecologists also study what happens to different species. They collect information [ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃn] about their population number, diet [ˈdaɪət], form, size and behaviour. Ecology is one of the most important sciences nowadays. It teaches us how to survive in the modern world.

B. Listen,  (47), and read the text again after it.

C. What is the message of the text?

- 7 A.** Read the text "What Is Ecology?" again and complete the sentences.

- 1) Ecology is a
- 2) Ecology studies
- 3) A natural environment is
- 4) Ecology teaches us
- 5) Ecologists collect information about

B. Answer the questions about ecology.

1) Why do people so often speak about ecology nowadays? What makes ecology an important science? 2) When did people first start speaking about ecology? 3) The information of what scienc-

¹ to need sth — нуждаться в чём-то



es does ecology use? 4) What are some of the problems ecologists are trying to solve¹? 5) How can the environment influence a living thing? Can you give an example? 6) What is human ecology? What does it study? 7) What is your natural environment? Do you think it is healthy?

C. Explain why ecology has become so important in the modern world.

8 What is their natural environment? What do they feed on?

Example: Fish. Fish live in water. Rivers, lakes, seas and oceans are their natural environment. They feed on other fish, water plants and other water organisms.



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.



13.

¹ to solve [solv] a problem — решить проблему



Как вы уже знаете, многие слова в английском языке образуются при помощи суффиксов. Познакомьтесь с некоторыми из них.

-tion

collect — collection
inform — information
populate — population

-th

wide — width (ширина)
long — length (длина)
grow — growth (рост)

-ance

important — importance

-ist

science — scientist
ecology — ecologist
piano — pianist

-ment

develop — development

- 9 Read the text and complete it with the derivatives of the words on the right.

Mr Fowles is a (1).
He collects (2) and
(3) facts about wild birds. For
example, he is interested in (4)
facts related to puffins, very (5)
sea birds. Mr Fowles often goes to one of
the islands in the North Sea to study the
(6) of puffins living there. He knows a
lot about these birds: the (7) and
(8) of their wings, the number of
chicks they have, the birds' (9)
and (10). The local (11) say Mr Fowles is
of great help to them.

science
inform
interest
differ
usual



populate
wide
long
develop
grow, ecology

**All, Both, Each**

Слово **all** (всё) относится к предметам или людям численностью больше двух. Определённый артикль после него используется в тех случаях, когда речь идёт о конкретных предметах или людях.

All people want to be happy. (Имеются в виду все люди вообще.)

All the pupils in my class like school parties. (Имеются в виду конкретные люди.)



Слово **both** [bəʊθ] (оба, обе) относится к предметам или людям, число которых — два. Определённый артикль после него может как употребляться, так и не употребляться.

Both children like biology.

Both the children are very young.

Обратите внимание, что слова **all** и **both** в предложении употребляются:

1) после глагола *to be* (*We are both happy. They are all at home now.*);

2) а также после модальных глаголов и первого вспомогательного глагола. (*They can both speak English. We have all come back.*).

В отличие от слов **both** и **all**, слово **each** (каждый) сочетается с глаголами в 3-м лице единственного числа.

Both students know this. Each student *knows* this.

All the books are new. Each of these books *is* new. (Ho: *They all like rock music.*)

10 Put the words *all* and *both* in the right place in the sentences.

Example: The stories tell us about life in older times.

Both stories tell us about life in older times.

- 1) We are ready to help you if you need our help.
- 2) People know that they need friends.
- 3) The singers have come to the concert hall.
- 4) The two brothers enjoy playing tennis.
- 5) These six chairs should stand around the table.
- 6) The two friends are from Scotland.
- 7) My parents watch comedies and dramas.
- 8) We can understand other people's problems.
- 9) Chemistry and physics are sciences.
- 10) The children are playing in the school garden.
- 11) Ann's parents are doctors.

Do It on Your Own

11 Complete the sentences with the new words.

- 1) The man was in good h... because he lived in happy s...s.
- 2) Barbara is c... money for our trip.
- 3) The soldiers s... the town but did not attack it.
- 4) People all over the world talk a lot about


e... and its problems. 5) It is difficult to s... in a desert if you have no water. 6) It is fun to watch the g... of a sunflower. 7) What's her c... of pictures like? What is its s...? 8) What subjects do they s... in the 8th form? 9) Jane says her parents i... her interests when she was very young. They taught her to like sciences. 10) How big is the p... of Moscow n...?

12 Fill in prepositions¹ where necessary.

1) People have always studied living things ... their natural environment. 2) How does our environment influence ... our children? 3) I don't think people living ... isolation could be happy. 4) Ecologists study what happens ... different species of birds and animals. 5) What size ... shoes do you wear? 6) What are the relations ... the two families? 7) Young people often send e-mails ... each other. 8) Mr Brown is 92 years old, but he is ... good health. 9) What's the number ... children in your family? 10) Nowadays people often travel ... air.

Step Two

Do It Together

1 **A.** Now you will hear a text,  (48), about climate. Listen to the text and say which of the facts are true, false or not stated in it.

- 1) Climate all over the world has become hotter.
- 2) Climate is changing nowadays.
- 3) Climate influences the life of people more than the life of plants and animals.
- 4) Climate in Europe has changed recently.
- 5) Winters in Europe are colder nowadays than in the twentieth century.
- 6) Summer temperatures in Europe can be more than thirty degrees above zero.

B. What problems can climatic changes bring to people?

¹ fill in prepositions [ˌprepə'zi[nz]] — вставьте предлоги





Известный вам предлог места **between** обозначает «между двумя объектами/субъектами». Если же количество объектов больше чем два, то употребляется предлог **among** [ə'ɪŋ], который переводится словами «между», «среди».

I could see a small house *between* the two trees.

I could see a small house *among* the old trees (more than two).

Запомните следующие словосочетания:

between you and me — между нами (говоря)

Between you and me, she has some problems with her best friend.

in between = between — между

She sat *in between* her two sons.

Только *in between* употребляется в конце предложения.

Kate has English at 10 a.m., science at 2 p.m. and music *in between*.

2 Look at the pictures and say where they are.



1) the children



2) Peter Sam Kate



3) the red car



4) the low table



5) the road



6) the monkey



Вам хорошо знаком английский модальный глагол **must**, означающий «должен, должны». Необходимость выполнения какого-либо действия или обладания каким-либо предметом можно выразить также при помощи глаголов **need (to)** и **have (to)**.

Sue needs to buy herself a new pen, she has lost her old one.

Заметьте, что глаголы *have* и *need* в этом значении не являются модальными и строят вопросы и отрицания при помощи вспомогательного глагола (*do, does, did*).

They *don't need* to come until six o'clock.

They *don't have* to come at six.

Если нужно сказать, что человек вынужден что-то делать из-за независящих от него обстоятельств, следует использовать глагол *to have (to)*.

We have nothing to eat, somebody *has to go* to the shop.

В том случае, если следует подчеркнуть, что нечто требуется кому(чему)-либо, так как оно крайне необходимо для дальнейшей деятельности (существования), используется глагол *to need*.

Plants *need* light in order to survive.

Если же требуется сказать, что человеку нужно сделать что-то единожды, употребляется оборот **have got to**.

I've *got to* take Rex out. (Usually my father does it but now he is ill.)

3 A. Fred works for Mr Brown. Speak about Fred's duties¹. Use the word *has (to)*.

Example: get up at six
Fred has to get up at 6 a.m.



1) make tea



2) answer telephone calls



¹ **duty (duties)** — обязанность, долг



3) clean Mr Brown's clothes



4) buy books
and maps in the shop



5) take Mr Brown's dog out



6) water the flowers



7) wash Mr Brown's car



8) put the letters
on Mr Brown's desk

B. And what are your usual duties?

- 1) Do you have to get up early?
- 2) Do you have to make breakfast?
- 3) Do you have to make your bed?
- 4) Do you have to feed your pet(s)?
- 5) Do you have to wash the plates?
- 6) Do you have to do the room(s)?
- 7) Do you have to go to the shops?
- 8) Do you have to help any members of your family?
- 9) Do you have to wash the car?
- 10) Do you have to clean the floors?
- 11) What other things do you have to do?

C. Name 3–5 things you've got to do this evening (tomorrow).**4 What do these words mean?**

- 1) Isolation means
 - a) being with others.
 - b) not being with others.
- 2) An organism is
 - a) a living animal or plant.
 - b) a very small organ.
- 3) Environment is
 - a) the place where we live.
 - b) our planet.
- 4) Ecology is
 - a) the study of people's behaviour and the way people, animals and plants live together.
 - b) the study of the environment and the way people, animals and plants live together.
- 5) An ecologist is
 - a) a person who loves the natural world.
 - b) a scientist who studies the environment.

6) Population is

a) a group of people living in the same place or plants growing in the same place.

b) a group of people or animals living in the same place.

5 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (49), and repeat.

A.

cut [kʌt] — резать

without [wɪð'au:t] — без

nature ['neɪtʃə] — природа

natural ['nætʃ(ə)rəl] — природный, естественный

pollute [pə'lu:t] — загрязнять

pollution [pə'lu:ʃn] — загрязнение

waste [weɪst] — отходы

dump [dʌmp] — свалка

danger ['deɪŋdʒə] — опасность

dangerous ['deɪŋdʒərəs] —

опасный

pour [pɔ:] — лить, сливать

factory ['fæktəri] — фабрика

power ['paʊə] — сила, мощь;

власть

powerful ['paʊəfʊl] — сильный,

мощный; обладающий

большой властью

power station ['paʊə ,steɪʃn] —

электростанция

B.

cut (cut, cut): to cut an apple, to cut bread. I'm going to cut the cake now. To cut down forests.

without: without food or water, without air. I can't make soup without potatoes. Without doing sth. They left without saying goodbye.

nature: beautiful nature, Mother Nature. I would like to visit the Far East to enjoy its nature.

natural: natural gas, natural talent. A river is a natural waterway, but a canal [kə'næl] is not. It is natural to smile when you are happy.

pollute: to pollute the water (air, soil). People mustn't pollute the environment.

pollution: water pollution, air pollution. Where does air pollution in the cities come from?

waste: Where do you put waste? Things that we throw away are waste.

waste of time: It's a waste of time to water the garden when it is raining.



dump: a large dump, a town dump. Take all these things to the town rubbish¹ dump.

danger: a big danger, a danger to small children, to be in danger, to be out of danger. This is a place where children can play without danger. The red colour usually means danger.

dangerous: a dangerous animal, a dangerous plant, a dangerous sport. Air pollution is a dangerous thing.

pour: to pour coffee into a cup, to pour water into a pot, to pour toxic waste into rivers and seas. Sit down and I'll pour you some juice.

factory: a big factory. There are very few factories in this town. At the Ford factory, they make cars.

power: electric power, a lot of power, to have power, to do everything in one's power. He did everything in his power to help me.

power station: There are a lot of power stations in Russia.

powerful: a powerful car, a powerful president. They say Sir Winston Churchill was a powerful man.

6 Look at the pairs of words. In each pair there is a word you know. Read the sentences below and guess what the other word in each pair means.

- to influence — influence
- dump — to dump
- waste — to waste
- diet — to diet
- relation — to relate
- environment — environmental
- pollute — polluted
- polluted — unpolluted

- 1) Television has a strong influence on people.
- 2) People often dump waste in the forests.
- 3) Don't waste your time, do something useful.
- 4) Would you like some cake, Jane? — No, thanks, I am dieting.
- 5) Ecology and biology relate (to each other).
- 6) Nowadays we have a lot of ecological environmental problems.
- 7) The water here is polluted and dangerous to drink.
- 8) The rivers in this part of the country are unpolluted.

¹ rubbish [ˈrʌbɪʃ] — мусор; *зд.*: мусорная (свалка)

- 7 A. Read the text "Our Environment" and find in it equivalents of the words and word combinations after it.

Our Environment

The environment is all the things we need to be able to live — clean water to drink and to wash with, air to breathe and healthy food to eat. We can't live without plants and animals. They help to make the soil, they clean the water and air, and they give us all our food.

The world is our home and we want to see it clean and beautiful. At the same time we take from nature as much as we can. We cut down forests and build farms, houses, roads and factories on the land. While doing it we pollute the environment. We make a lot of waste some of which is toxic. We dump domestic and industrial waste in the country and pour toxic waste into our rivers, seas and oceans.

Cars and factories, plants¹ and power stations pollute the air and make it dangerous to breathe. People have to think about all these ecological problems if they want to survive.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1) чтобы мы могли жить | 7) мы производим массу отходов |
| 2) воздух, чтобы дышать | 8) мы сбрасываем бытовые и промышленные отходы |
| 3) формировать почву | 9) сливаем ядовитые отходы |
| 4) столько, сколько можем | 10) опасный для дыхания |
| 5) мы вырубам леса | 11) выжить |
| 6) мы загрязняем окружающую среду | |

B. Listen,  (50), and read the text again after it.

C. What are the most serious ecological problems in the place where you live?

- 8 In how many ways can you complete these sentences?

- 1) People can't live without
- 2) People need to make our planet
- 3) We would like to see our rivers and lakes
- 4) It is dangerous to
- 5) There are a lot of things we can take from nature:
- 6) We pollute the environment when we
- 7) People should always remember that

¹ a plant — a factory that makes cars, machines, etc.



9 Make up 8 sentences about ecology.

Our	planet country air rivers, lakes and seas food forests people water	should be	healthy to eat. safe ¹ to live on. clean and not dangerous to bathe in. powerful and happy to live in. unpolluted and clean to breathe. rich in birds and animals. clean and safe to drink. healthy and happy.
-----	--	-----------	--



Focus

В тексте "Our Environment" и упражнениях после него вам встретились сочетания с инфинитивом типа: *water to drink*, *air to breathe*, *food to eat*. Во всех этих случаях инфинитив поясняет, уточняет имя существительное и является его определением. Подобные предложения часто используются в современном английском языке и могут вызывать некоторые трудности при переводе. Ср.:

water to drink — вода для питья (чтобы пить)

air to breathe — воздух для дыхания (чтобы дышать)

food to eat — продукты, предназначенные для еды (чтобы есть)

10 Put the statements below in the right categories.

Dos

Plant more trees to make your country green.

.....

Turn² the rivers into dumps.
Build factories on river banks.
Feed animals in cold seasons.

Don'ts

Cut down trees, which make our air clean.

.....

¹ safe — безопасный

² to turn [tɜ:n] — *зд.*: превращать

Help animals to survive.
Pour toxic waste into the rivers and lakes.
Dump old cars in forests.
Burn toxic waste.
Clean rivers and lakes.
Be careful with farm waste.
Use rivers for washing cars.
Use fewer cars.
Make Clean Air laws.
Take lorries out of city or town centres.
Pay big money if you're a polluter.
Make laws to control pollution.

- 11** Say what is pollution and why it can be dangerous.

Do It on Your Own

- 12** Use *between* or *among*.

1) Julia couldn't choose ... two dresses. 2) We spent last summer ... friends in Canada. 3) Elephants are ... the largest animals in the world. 4) The new American singer is popular ... young people. 5) I don't like Paul very much, but that's ... you and me. 6) The revolver lay ... the two boxes. 7) The tents were situated ... the high trees. 8) There is a bridge ... the island and the bank of the river. 9) I had English and Geography classes and lunch ... them. 10) You can choose ... cucumber salad and tomato salad.

- 13** Complete the text using the new words.

Everyone knows that life in the modern world has become rather d⁽¹⁾. In big cities there are a lot of f⁽²⁾s and cars that p⁽³⁾ the air. The water is p⁽⁴⁾ too because factories and plants p⁽⁵⁾ their w⁽⁶⁾ into the rivers, lakes and seas. In the country the e⁽⁷⁾ can be also p⁽⁸⁾. People d⁽⁹⁾ the industrial and domestic w⁽¹⁰⁾ everywhere: in the forests, fields, near the rivers and lakes. The food people eat is not always h⁽¹¹⁾. All these are serious e⁽¹²⁾ problems and we must solve them soon.

Do It Together

- 1 Listen to the story of dinosaurs¹, 🎧 (51), and say which of the facts below are true and which are false.

Dinosaurs — Very Big Lizards²

- 1) People have never seen dinosaurs alive³.
- 2) All dinosaurs ate plants.
- 3) Plant-eating dinosaurs could be as tall as 8 metres.
- 4) Tyrannosaurus⁴ killed other animals to eat.
- 5) They found dinosaur bones only in Antarctica.
- 6) Scientists know about 30 different species of dinosaurs.
- 7) Scientists don't know why dinosaurs died out.



- 2 John Trent got up very late and didn't do many of the things he usually does in the morning. Say what he didn't do.

Example: John didn't do morning exercises.

John left the house without doing morning exercises.

- 1) John didn't make his bed.
- 2) He didn't take a shower.
- 3) He didn't take his dog out.
- 4) John didn't have breakfast.
- 5) He didn't drink his usual cup of tea.
- 6) He didn't help his mother to wash the plates.
- 7) He didn't take his lunch with him.
- 8) He didn't say goodbye to his granny.
- 9) He didn't kiss his mother goodbye.

¹ a dinosaur ['daɪnəsɔ:] — динозавр

² a lizard ['lɪzəd] — ящерица

³ alive [ə'laɪv] — живые

⁴ a tyrannosaurus [tɪ'rænə'sɔ:ɾəs] — тираннозавр

3 Match the two columns.

- | | |
|---|------------------|
| 1) the place in which people live and work | a) waste |
| 2) a scientist who studies the environment and the way plants, animals and people live together in relation to each other | b) pollute |
| 3) to make air, water and soil too dirty and dangerous for people | c) nature |
| 4) useless materials | d) environment |
| 5) a place usually outside ¹ a town where people collect waste | e) healthy |
| 6) the world with all living things, the land and the seas | f) power station |
| 7) a large building with machines that give electricity [ɪˈlekˈtrɪsɪti] | g) ecologist |
| 8) good and useful for your health | h) dump |

4 A. Read the text and match its paragraphs with the titles. There are 6 titles but only 5 paragraphs. One title is extra.

- a) Land without Trees
- b) No Air to Breathe
- c) Dangerous Waters
- d) Toxic Food
- e) Problems Important for Everyone
- f) No Food for Animals

1) The word *environment* means what is around us. People who live in big industrial centres, cities and towns live in a town environment. For others their environment is the countryside². Everybody who lives in towns or in the country breathes air, drinks water, uses soil which should be clean. But are they really clean?

2) The water in the oceans, seas, and rivers has become polluted in many places. If people drink this water, they can get ill or even die. People use oceans and seas as big dumps and pour industrial

¹ **outside** — вне, за пределами

² **countryside** [ˈkʌntrɪsaɪd] — сельская местность

and domestic waste into them. And so fish become toxic. It is very dangerous for people to eat such fish. Water birds leave places with toxic water. A lot of trees on the coast die, too.

3) The food we eat is not always healthy as fruit and vegetables can grow on polluted soil and become dangerous too. The meat we get from sheep and cows can be bad for our health if these sheep and cows eat grass that grows on polluted land.

4) People cut down trees and many birds and animals can't have homes in their usual places and they begin dying out. If the situation doesn't change, soon we are going to live in a very different world — a world without a number of species that we know now.

5) Nowadays people feel that it is more difficult to breathe: in big cities the air has become badly polluted. Most of the pollution comes from cars and buses. Old people and little children feel bad and get ill because of the polluted air.

B. Listen, (52), and read the text again after it.



Focus

В английском языке существует конструкция **used to** ['ju:st tu:], используемая в повествовании о событиях, которые случались в прошлом, особенно если нужно подчеркнуть, что больше они не происходят.

I don't skate now, but I *used to skate* a lot when I was a child. — Сейчас я не катаюсь на коньках, но я много катался, когда был ребёнком.

When my granny was younger, she *used to travel* to different places of our country in summer. — Когда моя бабушка была моложе, летом она много путешествовала по нашей стране.

Вопросы и отрицания с данной конструкцией образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола *did*.

Did you use to work here?

We didn't use to read books about dinosaurs.

Обратите внимание на то, что после этой конструкции обычно употребляется инфинитив, но в некоторых случаях он опускается.

I don't play the piano now, but I used to (do it).

5 Mr Wilson is a very old man. Look at the pictures and say what he used to do when he was a small boy.



153

Step Three

6 Say what your relatives or friends used to do but don't do anymore.

Example: My sister used to get up late but she doesn't any longer.

to take long walks, to live in the country, to go to the cinema, to watch television a lot, to work in the garden, to collect pictures, to write poems, to work on the computer, to read at night, to dance, to drive a car

7 Say how things happened some time ago and how they happen now.

Example: light their streets and houses with gas/use electricity
Some time ago people used to light their streets and houses with gas but now they use electricity.

- 1) travel on horseback/travel by car, train and bus
- 2) wash things by hand/wash things in a washing machine
[mə'ʃi:n]
- 3) write letters/send e-mails

- 4) write books by hand/print¹ books
- 5) read more books/watch a lot of television
- 6) have big families with a lot of children/have smaller families
- 7) die early/live longer lives
- 8) walk upstairs and downstairs/use lifts
- 9) know not so much about our planet/know a lot about it
- 10) dream about flying to the stars/do it

8 Read the information below and complete it with the right figures. (The answers are on p. 155.)

How Long Does It Take?

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1) Some scientists think that it took the Solar System ² about ... million years to form from a cloud of gas. | a) 6 |
| 2) It takes the Earth ... days to go around the Sun. | b) 22 |
| 3) It takes the Moon just over ... days to travel round the Earth. | c) 4,600 |
| 4) It took the English language about ... years to develop into the language we speak today. | |
| 5) When Romans came to the British Isles in 53 BC, they built some very good roads. In those days it took only ... days by horse to get from London to Rome. About 1,500 years later in the 19th century it took just as long. | d) 200 |
| 6) It takes only ... minutes to fly from Westray Island to Papa Westray near Scotland. It is the shortest flight we know. | e) 2 |
| 7) An early bike that was popular in the 17th century had no pedals. It took ... years to make a bike with pedals. | f) 27 |
| 8) The eucalyptus ³ grows quicker than any other tree: it takes about ... year to grow 10.5 metres tall. | g) 1,600 |
| 9) The sloth ⁴ is the slowest land animal in the world. It takes a sloth about ... minutes to go 100 metres. The best runner in the world can do this distance in under 10 seconds. | h) 365 ¹ / ₄ |
| | i) 1 |

¹ to print [print] — печатать

² the Solar System — Солнечная система

³ a eucalyptus [ju:kə'liptəs] — эвкалипт

⁴ a sloth [sləʊθ] — ленивец (зоол.)

9 Read and act out the dialogues. Then change parts of the dialogues using the words in the right column and act them out again.

- 1) — Could you wait a second? I'll change my clothes and come back.
— A second? It usually takes you hours to change your clothes.
— Don't be silly! It won't take me more than five minutes, you'll see.
- 2) — I hate washing the plates, it usually takes me hours.
— Does it? I wash the plates very quickly. It doesn't take me more than 10 minutes.
— Really?!
- 3) — How long will it take me to do the History Museum?
— It will take you rather long, it's a very big museum.
— I see.

make tea
water the plants
walk the dog
call Sally
wash the plates

doing my homework
cleaning the room
cooking
washing the car

to get to St Petersburg
to grow a fruit garden
to learn English
to do this exercise

Answers to exercise 8, page 154.

1 c, 2 h, 3 f, 4 g, 5 a, 6 e, 7 d, 8 i, 9 b

Do It on Your Own

10 Use the word *take* in the right form.

- 1) In older times it ... people weeks to travel from Moscow to St Petersburg. Now it ... us from 1.5 to 8 hours. 2) I am going to the shops. It ... me rather a long time to buy everything I need. Don't wait for me. 3) It ... people a long time to understand that the future of our planet is in danger. 4) Yesterday it ... us half an hour to clean the classroom and decorate it for the holiday. 5) How long ... you to finish writing the story? Will it be ready tomorrow? 6) It never ... me longer than 20 minutes to do my room. I do it very quickly. 7) Last year it ... the Browns two

weeks to find a nice house in the country. 8) It usually ... my father about an hour to get home from work. 9) My brother has just become a student. It ... him five years to complete his university course. 10) How long ... you to learn English? You speak it very well.

11 Insert the missing words, where necessary.

1) Nowadays a lot of animals and birds are ... danger. 2) It is dangerous to cut ... forests. 3) Reading such books is just a waste ... time. 4) The population ... tigers ... the Far East is getting smaller ... number. 5) There was a narrow road running ... the trees in the forest. 6) Scientists want to know how living things develop in relation ... each other. 7) A lot of factories pour their industrial waste ... rivers, seas and lakes. 8) Ecologists can help us to live ... our planet ... making our environment dangerous. 9) Mr Poller is 92 but he is ... good health. 10) How does the sun influence ... the people of the Earth?

Step Four

Do It Together

1 A. Listen to the text "Rainforests", (53), and complete these sentences.

- 1) Rainforests used to grow on different continents: in
- 2) A hundred million years ago rainforests grew
- 3) The ... rainforest is famous all over the world.
- 4) In rainforests it rains
- 5) In rainforests the usual temperature is
- 6) In the twentieth century people began

B. Why do you think rainforests are so important for the life on the planet?

2 Work in pairs. Find out how long it takes your partners:

- to do their room (flat)
- to get to school
- to do their homework
- to do the shopping
- to wash the plates
- to help their grandparents



3 Say where Mr Richardson used to live and what he used to do there.



10 years old
(on the farm)

- to feed animals
- to plant trees
- to grow fruit and vegetables
- to ride horses
- to help his parents about the farm

20 years old
(in London)

- to go to university
- to travel by underground
- to visit museums
- to meet a lot of interesting people
- to have a lot of friends

4 Say what life used to be like on our planet many years ago — in prehistoric¹ times.

- water
- land
- ice
- climate
- forests
- animals
- people

5 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (54), and repeat.

A.

badge [bædʒ] — значок

member [ˈmembə] — член группы (*организации, общества*)

protect [prəˈtekt] — защищать

protected [prəˈtektɪd] — защищённый

endangered [ɪnˈdeɪndʒəd] — вымирающий

extinct [ɪkˈstɪŋkt] — вымерший, исчезнувший

destroy [dɪˈstrɔɪ] — разрушать

habitat [ˈhæbɪtæt] — естественная среда обитания

¹ prehistoric [ˌpriːhɪˈstɔːk] — доисторический



badge: old badges, to collect badges, a wonderful collection of badges. In some English schools pupils wear school badges on their uniforms.

member: a member of the group, a member of the party. There used to be ninety members in our club but there are only thirty now.

protect: to protect life, to protect birds and animals, to protect from danger. We should protect wildlife on the Earth. John wore a jacket to protect himself from the cold.

protected: a protected species. Lily of the valley is a protected species of flowers.

endangered: endangered species, endangered animals. Elephants in Africa have become endangered animals. There are many endangered animals nowadays, for example African and Indian lions, mountain gorillas [gə'ri:lz] in Africa.

extinct: to become extinct, extinct species, extinct animals. The Tasmanian tiger became extinct in 1936. What extinct animals can you name?

destroy: to destroy towns, to destroy a castle. People have destroyed half of the world's rainforests.

habitat: a habitat of plants, a habitat of animals. What is the natural habitat of tigers?

6 Answer these questions.

- 1) What is the natural habitats of fish, bears, elephants, gorillas?
- 2) What animals are extinct?
- 3) There are a lot of endangered species of animals and plants nowadays. Can you name some of them?
- 4) How can people protect endangered animals?
- 5) Can you give an example of how man destroys the habitats of birds, animals and plants?
- 6) Why do people destroy forests? How does this influence the wildlife? The life of people?
- 7) Do you think it is easy for different animal species to survive in the 21st century? Why?
- 8) Have you ever been a member of some ecological organization? Would you like to become one?

- 7 **A.** Listen to the text, (55), and find in it some important information about *WWF* and *Greenpeace*. Then act out the dialogue.



An Unusual Badge

J a n e: Miss Chapman, may I ask you something?

M i s s C h.: Yes, Jane, what is it?

J a n e: What's that badge you are wearing?

M i s s C h.: This panda badge? It shows that I am a member of WWF.

J a n e: What's WWF? I've never heard of it.

M i s s C h.: WWF means "Worldwide Fund for Nature". It's an international organization that protects wildlife on the planet. I believe WWF needs our support because it is very important to help wild animals to survive.

J a n e: What do they do to help animals to survive?

M i s s C h.: Different things. Mostly they help endangered animals. For example, if the population of some species is very small, it means they can become extinct. Ecologists protect them and try to make their population larger.

J a n e: I see. That's very interesting. They are like Greenpeace. I'd like to work with Greenpeace. I think they are very active and brave. They stop those people who kill endangered animals and destroy their habitats.

M i s s C h.: I know. All ecological organizations are useful. The more of them the better. Everyone should do what they can.



159

Step Four

- B.** What endangered animals do you know? What can help them to survive?

- B** Whose badges are they?



E x a m p l e: Badge one belongs to a pupil.



1.



2.



3.

4.

5.



6.



7.



8.



9.

- a) a pupil
- b) a sports club fan¹
- c) a Greenpeace member
- d) a member of an Olympic team²
- e) a member of an international peace³ organization
- f) a history lover
- g) a member of a readers' organization
- h) a member of the international organization "Worldwide Fund for Nature"
- i) a member of an ecological movement



Focus

В английском языке часто встречается конструкция **the more... the more** (**the more... the less**, etc.). Обратите внимание на употребление сравнительной степени прилагательных и наречий с определённым артиклем для того, чтобы подчеркнуть, что оба процесса происходят одновременно.

The more people you know, the less time you have to see them. — Чем больше людей ты знаешь, тем меньше времени у тебя на то, чтобы видеться с ними.

The longer I stay in Moscow, the more I love the city. — Чем дольше я живу в Москве, тем больше я люблю этот город.

¹ a fan — болельщик

² a team — команда

³ peace — мир, покой

A.

- 1) The more ecological organizations we have, the better.
- 2) The more people you meet, the more friends you get.
- 3) The fewer mistakes you make in your tests, the better mark you get.
- 4) The less we destroy our planet, the happier we will be.
- 5) The kinder you are to your pets, the more they love you.
- 6) The more you speak English, the better you do it.
- 7) The stronger you are, the better you play football.
- 8) The more you watch television, the less time you have for reading.
- 9) The more trees we plant, the cleaner air we breathe.
- 10) The longer I collect badges, the more interesting it becomes.

B.

The more we learn, the more we know.
The more we know, the more we forget.
The more we forget, the less we know.
Then why study?



10 Match the parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1) The more fruit and vegetables we eat, | a) the more they learn about the world. |
| 2) The warmer and wetter the climate is, | b) the more people like you. |
| 3) The more water we waste, | c) the more interesting it is to learn the language. |
| 4) The more people travel, | d) the better plants grow. |
| 5) The longer you stay in the hot sun, | e) the easier it is for them to survive. |
| 6) The friendlier you are, | f) the healthier we are. |
| 7) The bigger the animal population is, | g) the more trees we have to cut down. |
| 8) The more we know about English-speaking countries, | h) the more we destroy the ecology of our lakes and rivers. |
| 9) The more we study the history of people, | i) the more interesting the facts we learn. |
| 10) The more paper we use, | j) the more dangerous for you it is. |

Do It on Your Own

11 Write 5 true sentences.

- 1) The more time I spend with my friends,
- 2) The longer I learn English,
- 3) The older I get,
- 4) The more I think about the future,
- 5) The better I understand life,

12 Use the new words to complete the sentences.

- 1) Tigers living in the Far East of Russia have become e... species.
- 2) Flamingos live in the tropics. They are water birds, so their h... is lakes.
- 3) The names of all pr... species of Russia are in the Red Book of plants and animals.
- 4) Greenpeace tries to stop those who d... nature.
- 5) When people cut down forests, a lot of species become ex... .
- 6) It's not easy to p... our world from air, water and soil pollution.
- 7) M...s of ecological organizations often wear b...s to show what their interests and ideas are.

Step Five

Do It Together

- 1 Read the text, then listen to it, (56), and say what information is missing¹ in the text.

As Dead² as a Dodo ['dɒdəʊ]

You have never seen a dodo. Your friends and teachers have never seen a dodo. Your grandparents never saw a dodo. The last of these large quiet birds died many years ago.

The dodo lived on the island of Mauritius [məʊʀɪʃəs]. Dutch ships came to that island



¹ is missing ['mɪsɪŋ] — отсутствует

² dead [ded] — мёртвый



and found these big fat birds. Dodos could not fly, but they were not afraid of people.

Visitors to Mauritius killed all the dodos on the island. By the 1690s there were no dodos in the world. Nowadays you can see only bones of these birds and their pictures.

The story of the dodo is very sad and it shows you how dangerous man can be and how easy it is to destroy wildlife.

- 2 This is what some people think about ecological problems. Which of their ideas do you agree¹ with?

What Can I Do?

A n n a: They are beginning to build a new road near our beautiful park. Birds and small animals are afraid of people and the noise from roads. So they will leave this place. My friends and I are going to write to our local politicians [ˌpɒlɪˈtɪʃənz] and ask them to stop building the road.



L i z a: I am an animal lover, so I don't eat meat. Sheep, pigs and cows aren't in danger, but they don't live in their natural environment and they die young for meat eaters.



M i k e: I always walk or go by bike. People can do something about pollution from cars.



M r P o t t e r: I give money to protect wild animals — whales and dolphins². I think it is very important to help these wonderful sea animals to survive.



¹ to agree — соглашаться

² whales [weɪlz] and dolphins [ˈdɒlfɪnz] — киты и дельфины

Mrs Colton: I used to wear a fox coat and I loved it. But now I think it is terrible to wear a coat from a dead animal. I'll never do it again.



Mark: I never go to the zoo. I hate zoos because I think that animals are not happy there. Zoos are not natural places for any animal.



Sofia: I never buy early spring flowers. Most of them are endangered and I think it is very bad to make money by destroying them!



Focus

В английском языке восклицательные предложения строятся с помощью слов **what** и **how**. Ср.:

What a wonderful day (it is)! How wonderful the day is!
 What a clever boy he is! How clever he is!
 What interesting stories! How interesting the stories are!
 What cold water! How cold the water is!

Обратите внимание на использование артиклей в восклицательных предложениях с *what*.

1. В предложениях с *исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе* нужен **неопределённый** артикль.

What a big park it is! What an interesting book!

2. В предложениях с *исчисляемыми существительными во множественном числе* употребляется **нулевой** артикль¹.

What kind gentlemen! What tasty sweets!

3. В предложениях с *неисчисляемыми существительными* также употребляется **нулевой** артикль.

What fresh air! What fine weather!

¹ **нулевой артикль (zero article)** — отсутствие артикля перед именами существительными

3 Say the same in a different way.

What...!

- 1) ...
- 2) What fresh air!
- 3) What beautiful valleys!
- 4) ...
- 5) ...
- 6) What slow animals!
- 7) ...
- 8) What funny monkeys!
- 9) ...
- 10) What tasty chocolate!

How...!

- 1) How dangerous this place is!
- 2) ...
- 3) ...
- 4) How powerful the king is!
- 5) How charming the babies are!
- 6) ...
- 7) How rich this area is!
- 8) ...
- 9) How fast the rabbits are!
- 10) ...

4 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, listen, (57), and repeat.

A.

save [seɪv] — спасать

law [lɔ:] — закон

government ['gʌvnmənt] — правительство

responsible [rɪ'spɒnsəbl] — ответственный

hunt [hʌnt] — охотиться

damage ['dæmɪʒ] — повредить, нанести урон

unfortunately [ʌn'fɔ:tʃ(ə)nətli] — к несчастью

recycle [rɪ:'saɪkl] — перерабатывать

necessary ['nesɪs(ə)rɪ] — необходимый

B.

save: to save people, to save from danger. The house was on fire but he saved the pictures. Only hard work can save our project.

law: good laws, to make a law, to be against the law. Killing endangered species of animals is against the law.

government: the Russian government, the British government. The Government is the people who rule a country or a state.

responsible: a responsible person, a responsible post, to be responsible for sth. Who is responsible for buying the food for dinner?

damage: to damage buildings, to damage forests. Pollution has damaged the island's ecology.

hunt: to hunt animals for sth. People have been hunting crocodiles for their teeth. John spent the whole day hunting deer.

hunter: a well-known hunter.



unfortunately: unfortunately for sb. Unfortunately we are leaving Moscow tonight. Unfortunately for Garry the weather has changed for the worse. He can't go hunting.

recycle: to recycle waste, to recycle paper (glass). Japan recycles 40% (forty per cent) of its waste.

necessary: to be necessary for sb. Such food is necessary for your health. I have packed all the necessary things for our trip. You should come at noon if Alice says it is necessary.

5 Complete the sentences.

Must or Must Not?

- 1) Governments ... put laws into practice¹.
- 2) Governments ... build factories to recycle waste.
- 3) We ... support people who damage endangered plants. We ... buy early spring flowers such as the lily of the valley.
- 4) Politicians ... listen to scientists and do all they can to protect nature.
- 5) Governments ... make laws that can damage the environment.
- 6) All people ... be responsible for the future of our planet.
- 7) Nobody ... hunt endangered animals.
- 8) We all ... work together to save our planet.

6 These children belong to the Young Ecologists Club. They are going to have a conference ['kɒnfərəns] soon. Say how they are preparing for it.

Example: to make badges for the conference members

Pete is responsible for making badges for the conference members.



1) Pete



2) Mary



3) Tom



4) John



5) William

¹ to put laws into practice — претворять законы в жизнь



6) Kate



7) Rob



8) Helen



9) Alice

- 1) to interview a famous scientist
- 2) to invite a well-known ecologist to school
- 3) to decorate the hall
- 4) to talk on endangered species of plants and animals
- 5) to talk on the main ecological problems
- 6) to write questions to the members of the local government on the ecology of the place
- 7) to take photos of the local National Park
- 8) to write a letter to the local government to build a new recycling factory

7 A. Read the text and say what governments should do to protect nature in their countries.

Will We Survive?

People have been polluting the planet on which they live for many years. The result [rɪ'zʌlt] is very sad. We all live in a polluted world. Pollution started in a small way, but then it began growing and soon we will all be in danger. The time has come to save our planet, to protect people, animals and plants from dying.

First of all countries should have strong laws to control pollution, to protect animals and plants. Governments should be responsible for protecting nature. Today the law in some countries says: "The polluter must pay. If a person damages trees or animals, he must also pay." But unfortunately such good laws don't always work.

Scientists often meet and talk about ways of helping nature, and politicians in many countries listen to them and are beginning to talk about this too.

Countries can open national parks. They are big and usually very beautiful places without buildings. These are homes for animals

living freely and also for birds, trees and flowers. Visitors can go there but they can't hunt there. Politicians can think of ways to stop hunting.

Governments should also find ways to recycle things we have used: paper bags and plastic bags, plastic bottles and cans¹, glass and metal things. They should build recycling factories. Governments must control and if necessary, close dangerous plants and factories.

We all must work together to make our planet a safe and beautiful place to live.

B. Listen,  (58), and read the text after it again.

8 Read the text "Shall We Survive?" again and say:

- why we all will be in danger soon
- how laws can help to protect nature
- why politicians must listen to scientists
- in what way national parks can help to protect wildlife
- what things we can recycle and why it is important
- who is responsible for making our planet a safe and beautiful place



Social English

9 A. Learn instructing [ɪnˈstrʌktɪŋ] **people how to do things.**

The first thing you should do is... — Первое, что нужно сделать, это...

The next thing you do is... — Следующее, что ты сделаешь, это...

By the way, don't forget to... — Между прочим, не забудь...

Remember to... — Не забудь...

Another thing to remember is... — Ещё о чём нельзя забыть, так это...

Be careful not to... — Смотри не...

B. Complete the text. Use the "instruction" phrases.

Grow Your Own Violets²

 ⁽¹⁾ is to choose a healthy leaf and cut it off from the plant.

 ⁽²⁾ is to prepare a pot of good soil. By the way, ⁽³⁾ to wet the soil well. ⁽⁴⁾ to make the soil soft. Put the leaf into the soil as you see in the picture. ⁽⁵⁾ not to damage it. Take a glass jar



¹ a can — консервная банка

² a violet ['vaɪələɪt] — фиалка

and cover¹ the leaf with it. The soil should always be wet. ⁽⁶⁾ is that your young plant should not stand in direct sunshine. You'll see that your violet will soon develop roots and new leaves.

Do It on Your Own

169

Step Five



10 Use the articles (*a/an, the*) where necessary.

1) What ... big ears you have, grandma! 2) How dangerous ... place looks! 3) How ... empty the islands are! 4) What ... unusual clock it is! 5) How brave ... boys are! 6) What ... interesting films! 7) How polluted ... lake is! 8) How sunny ... weather is! 9) What ... funny clothes she wears! 10) What ... tasty vegetables I've bought!

11 Write the same in English.

Спасать вымирающих животных, создавать законы, влиять на экологию, загрязнять реки, изучать вымершие виды, перерабатывать отходы, быть ответственным за охрану (защиту) природы, охотиться на диких животных, наносить урон лесам, разрушать места обитания животных.

What Do You Think?

12 Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.

- As you sow, so you reap.
- It is a foolish bird that soils its own nest.
- Desperate diseases must have desperate remedies.

Check Your Progress

13 Write TEST 4 (Workbook 2, pp. 36–43) and check your results.

Tasks	1	2	3	4			5	6	7	8a	Total
				a	b	c					
Maximum result	6	7	7	4	4	4	5	—	10	15	62
Your result											

¹ to cover [ˈkʌvə] — зб.: накрывать

Unit 5



Keeping Fit

Step One

Do It Together

1 You will hear two texts, (59). Choose titles for them from those below. There is one extra title.

- a) The Ecology of Man
- b) How to Stop Pollution
- c) What We Need Is Working Together

2 Give your reaction¹ to these phrases as in the example.

Example: The Mississippi is the longest river in the USA.

- a) (What/mighty)
What a mighty river it is!
- b) (How/mighty)
How mighty the river is!

- 1) Sid's brother is a famous journalist. (How/proud)
- 2) Everybody in Russia knows Saratov, Samara and Volgograd that lie on the Volga. (What/famous)
- 3) These are the longest instructions I have ever read. (How/difficult)
- 4) Nowadays many governments have good laws protecting nature. (What/responsible)
- 5) This badge belongs to a member of our ecological society. (What/unusual)

¹ reaction [rɪˈækʃn] — реакция



6) Jane is on a diet. She eats only fruit and vegetables. (How/healthy)

7) A lot of factories dump their waste into this river. (What/dangerous)

8) Mr Richardson is a successful businessman. So many men work for him. (What/powerful)

9) There are some unpolluted places around Moscow. (What/safe)



Focus

В английском языке есть ещё одно грамматическое время из группы прошедших времён — **past perfect** (*прошедшее совершенное*). Оно строится по следующей модели:

had + V₃

I had done... He had written... We had met...

Данное время используется для обозначения действия, которое произошло до определённого момента в прошлом.

I had done my flat **by 3 o'clock**.

I had done my flat **by the time mother came back**.

Обычно **past perfect** употребляется, когда нужно рассказать о двух действиях в прошлом, подчёркивая, что одно из них произошло раньше, чем другое.

Jane couldn't find the key I **had given** her. — Джейн не могла найти ключ, который я ей когда-то (некоторое время тому назад) дал.

Past perfect часто употребляется со словами *after, before, when, as soon as, because, by the time*.

As soon as I **had washed** the plates, mum came.

After Mary **had done** the shopping, she went back home.

Robin **had left** before Alice returned.

When Betty phoned, Jim **had already sent** the e-mail to her.

3 Look at the pictures and say what they had done by four o'clock yesterday.

Example: Rose had written a letter by four o'clock yesterday.



Rose



Mrs Rogers



Ann and Jane



Mrs Brown



Brian



Max Wood



Henry



Kelly Hudson

4 Say what these people had just done when it started raining.

Example: Mr Robinson/to put his car into the garage
Mr Robinson had just put his car into the garage when it started raining.

- 1) Larry/to leave his office
- 2) Bobby/to get on a bus
- 3) Mr Newman/to enter the shop
- 4) Dan/to decide to go for a walk
- 5) Ms Forester/to come out into the garden
- 6) The Trembles/to finish supper
- 7) Charles/to turn on the television
- 8) Sharon/to clean the floors
- 9) Lizzy/to wash her sweater
- 10) Mr Mole/to start working in the garden

5 Say what you had done yesterday.

- a) before your parent(s) came back home
- b) by the time supper was ready
- c) by 6 p.m.

6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words, (60).

A.

exercise ['eksəsaɪz] — физические упражнения, моцион

enough [ɪ'nʌf] — достаточно

join [dʒɔɪn] — присоединяться

relax [rɪ'læks] — расслаблять-

ся

keep [ki:p] — держать, хра-

нить, оставить себе

harm [hɑ:m] — вред

smoke [sməʊk] — курить

drug [drʌg] — 1) наркотик;

2) лекарство

hard [hɑ:d] — 1) *adj* тяжё-

лый, усердный; 2) *adv* тя-

жело, усердно, сильно

junk food ['dʒʌŋk fu:d] — не-

полноценная пища

B.

exercise: a lot of exercise, to get exercise, to take (have) exercise. Boris should take more exercise.

enough: enough food, enough time, tall enough, quickly enough. Are there enough vegetables to make a salad? Does Ann play the piano well enough?

join: to join the club, to join the group. Alan joined us for a walk.

relax: Sit down and try to relax for half an hour.



keep (kept, kept): to keep sth, to keep doing something, to keep a secret, to keep a diary, to keep (to) a diet, to keep fit. Where can I keep my books? I always keep a carton of milk in the fridge. John kept walking without listening to her. She has kept a diary since childhood. You should take a lot of exercise to keep fit. Try and always keep your word.

harm: a lot of harm, no harm, to do some harm. It'll do you no harm to have some exercise, in fact it will do you a lot of good. If you spend so much time working on the computer, it'll do you more harm than good.

harmful: harmful food, to be harmful for sb or sth. Reading in bed can be harmful for your eyes.

smoke: I don't smoke. Mr Brown smokes only cigars, he doesn't smoke a pipe. Stop smoking, it will damage your health. No smoking!

drug: 1) to take drugs, to use drugs. Jenny has never taken drugs in her life and she says she never will. No drug-taking. 2) Aspirin is a well-known drug that often helps.

hard: 1) hard work, a hard day, hard life. It's hard to believe that we are leaving this place forever. 2) to work hard, to breathe hard, to fight hard. I was trying very hard to remember her name.

junk food: Junk food is not healthy, there is a lot of fat, salt and sugar in it.

7 Complete the sentences. Use the new words.

- 1) Paul is a member of our football team now, he ... it not long ago.
- 2) Some children prefer ... food to having a real lunch at school. So they buy chocolate, sweets and chips.
- 3) We have a number of very good pupils in my class. They all work very ... and get good marks.
- 4) I'm afraid I haven't got ... money to buy this new disk.
- 5) Victor ... his word and brought us a good dictionary.
- 6) It said "No ...!" on the wall but there stood a man who was ... a cigarette.
- 7) Where do you ... your books? I can't see any bookcase or bookshelves in your room.
- 8) After I had broken my arm, my doctor told me to ... it as much as possible.

- 3) Be sporty. Join a sports club or go to the gym and work out¹.
- 4) Take enough sleep. Most people need eight hours of sleep to feel well.
- 5) Leave some time for relaxing after a hard working day.
- 6) Spend some time out of doors every day. Fresh air does us a lot of good.
- 7) Limit the time you spend in front of your television or computer to an hour — an hour and a half.
- 8) Keep to a healthy balanced diet. Don't overeat.
- 9) Don't eat junk food. Some kinds of food are harmful.
- 10) Don't smoke or drink alcohol. Never use drugs.

10 Which of the rules (ex. 9) do you think are the most important and why? Put them all in order of importance².



Focus

Обратите внимание на сочетания слова **enough** с различными частями речи.

enough + noun

to have enough time
to get enough money
to make enough sandwiches

adjective + enough adverb + enough verb + enough

to be long enough
to run quickly enough
not to practise enough

11 Complete these sentences.

1) John is (old enough/enough old) to go to school. 2) Don't hurry. There is (time enough/enough time) to do it. 3) There is (food enough/enough food) for everyone. 4) The poor man doesn't (eat enough/enough eat). 5) Have I made (enough coffee/coffee enough)? 6) Have we (enough apples/apples enough) for everyone? 7) The days have become (long enough/enough long). 8) Kevin doesn't work (hard enough/enough hard). 9) The road is not (wide enough/enough wide) for two cars. 10) Are there (enough pencils/pencils enough) for all the pupils?

¹ to work out — поддерживать физическую форму

² Put them all in order of importance. — Расположи их (правила) в порядке важности.



Do It on Your Own

12 Write it in English.

Достаточно усердно, достаточно сильный, достаточно воздуха, достаточно быстро, достаточно вопросов, достаточно сложный, достаточно успешный, достаточно энергии.

13 Match the two parts of the sentences. Compare your results.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1) We had just finished the job | a) before the bell rang. |
| 2) They had written the exercise | b) when I entered the kitchen. |
| 3) Alice had read the book | c) by 3 o'clock yesterday. |
| 4) John had finished watching TV | d) before I gave it to her. |
| 5) Mary had already had breakfast | e) when it started raining. |
| 6) Victor had heard the news | f) before I told him about it. |
| 7) Brian had just left the school building | g) when Tom brought us some more. |
| 8) I had already known everything | h) by the time I got the telegramme. |

177

Step Two

Step Two

Do It Together

1 A. Listen to the text "Fast Food", (61), and complete the sentences.



- 1) We can find fast food restaurants
- 2) It doesn't take ... to have meals in fast food restaurants.
- 3) Nowadays scientists talk a lot about
- 4) Some scientists think that many people have become fat because
- 5) In fast food restaurants there is



B. Why do you think fast food restaurants are so popular all over the world? Why are they popular if they do so much harm?

- 2** Read the examples and say how we can form questions and negative sentences in *past perfect*.

A.

- 1) When Tom came to his office, he was hungry. He **hadn't had** breakfast.
- 2) Jane was unhappy when she came back home. She **hadn't written** her test.
- 3) I didn't know what to do, Martin **hadn't phoned** me.

B.

- 1) **Had Tom gone** home when you came? — Yes, he had.
- 2) **Had Mary cleaned** the floor by 7 o'clock? — No, she hadn't.
- 3) **Had you cooked** lunch before granny got up? — Yes, I had.

- 3** Read the text "Prodigy Child" and find in it sentences in *past perfect*. Why are they used in this text?

Prodigy Child

Kevin was a prodigy child. By the age of two he had learned to read and write. Before his fifth birthday his parents had taught him to speak French and German and he played the piano rather well. Kevin was a great lover of books and by the age of ten he had already read all the books in his father's library. When all his friends were still in the second form, he had already left school. After he had finished college, he went to university to become a microbiologist. At sixteen he was ready for his final exams and soon became the youngest scientist in the history of his country. He was happy because he hadn't wasted his time and got a good profession that he loved. The only problem with Kevin was that he had never played football or basketball with his friends and had no idea of sports, games or children's parties: he hadn't had time for them.





1. В предложениях с **after** и **before** вместо *past perfect* в английском языке часто употребляется *past simple*, так как слова **after** и **before** сами указывают на очерёдность действий. Ср.:

- Sam had left before Ann got there.
- Sam left before Ann got there.
- After the guests had left, I went to bed.
- After the guests left, I went to bed.

2. *Past simple*, а не *past perfect* употребляется в том случае, когда действия в прошлом происходили одно непосредственно за другим. Ср.:

- Pete came home and helped his sister to cook dinner.
- Larry opened the door and his dog ran in.

4 Choose the right item to complete the sentences.

- 1) I was really surprised when I learned that Harry
a) became a champion b) had become a champion
- 2) When Tom went to medical school, he already ... a lot of books on anatomy.
a) read b) had read
- 3) I ... from school rather tired and decided to relax for half an hour in front of the television.
a) came b) had come
- 4) The child didn't feel very well. I think he ... too much junk food.
a) ate b) had eaten
- 5) By the beginning of the new year Paul ... our team and was playing for the school.
a) joined b) had joined
- 6) I kept my word and ... hard during the rest of the school term.
a) worked b) had worked
- 7) Father began to feel much better because he ... up smoking.
a) gave b) had given
- 8) The garden looked terrible: the wind and the rain ... it badly.
a) damaged b) had damaged




5 Make up sentences about Andy with *because*. Use *past perfect*.

Example: Andy was sick when he smoked a cigarette.

Andy was sick when he smoked a cigarette because he had never smoked before.

- 1) Andy decided to go to the disco.
- 2) Andy bought the new disc of his favourite singer.
- 3) Andy got very tired of roller-skating.
- 4) Andy didn't play baseball very well.
- 5) Andy bought a beautiful new jacket.
- 6) Andy went to bed early yesterday.
- 7) Andy fell off the horse.
- 8) Andy was afraid to drive.
- 9) Andy wanted to watch "Lord of the Rings" on television.
- 10) Andy began to learn Italian.
- 11) Andy went to a Japanese restaurant.
- 12) Andy didn't know how to grow roses.

6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words and word combinations. Listen,  (62), and repeat.

A.

medicine ['medsən] — 1) медицина; 2) лекарство

lose [lu:z] — терять

weight [weɪt] — вес

weigh [wei] — весить, взвешивать

still [stɪl] — ещё, всё ещё

habit ['hæbɪt] — привычка

jog [dʒɒg] — бегать трусцой

hardly ['hɑ:dli] — едва

to get a cold

to catch a cold

to come down

with a cold

to have a cold — быть простуженным

to do one's best — постараться изо всех сил

} простудиться

B.

medicine: 1) to study medicine. Sandra studied medicine for five years before she became a doctor. 2) to take medicines, a medicine for sth. Penicillin is a medicine. What medicine do you take for a high temperature?

lose (lost, lost): to lose keys, to lose money. Mike lost his job last year. I can't find my address book anywhere. I think I have lost it.

weight: the weight of a suitcase, in weight, to lose weight, to put on weight. The box was about 12 kilos in weight. Have you lost weight? Susan has put on weight since the summer.



weigh: to weigh much, to weigh little. The baby weighs three kilos. The shop girl weighed the tomatoes for me.

still: I'm still busy. Johnny still goes to school. It is still raining.

habit: a good habit, a terrible habit, to give up a habit. My sister has healthy eating habits. My elder brother has some very bad habits. He sometimes smokes in bed and doesn't wash up after his meals.

jog (jogged, jogged): to jog in the morning, to go jogging. When people jog, they run slowly usually for exercise or pleasure. I go jogging every morning.

hardly: Boris can hardly speak English. There was hardly any wind. Bob has hardly eaten anything. **Hardly ever:** He hardly ever does anything interesting.

catch (get/have) a cold: When you catch a cold, doctors usually tell you to stay in bed. Joanna has a bad cold and doesn't go to school.

come down with a cold: What's the matter? — I think I'm coming down with a cold.

do one's best: I don't know if I can do it but I'll do my best. Nick says he will do his best to keep his word.



Focus

В 1999 году в Британии закончился официальный переход на метрическую систему измерения веса и расстояния. Английские школьники, как и российские, учат в школе, что километр состоит из тысячи метров, а в килограмме — тысяча граммов. Однако все жители Британии хорошо помнят старую систему измерений и продолжают ею пользоваться. Так, на рынках и в магазинах вам взвешивают продукты в фунтах, объём напитков исчисляется в пинтах, а расстояние — в милях. Для многих людей, особенно старшего поколения, это гораздо более привычно. То же положение дел характерно и для США.

Length

1 inch = 2.54 cm

1 foot = 0.3048 m

1 yard = 3 feet = 0.9144 m

1 mile = 1.609 km

Weight

1 ounce [auns]/oz/ = 28.35 g

1 pound/lb/ = 0.454 kg

1 stone = 14 pounds = 6.35 kg

Liquids

1 pint [paint] = 0.4732 dm³

1 gallon = 3.7853 dm³

Обратите внимание, что на письме англичане отделяют десятичные дроби от целого числа точкой, а не запятой, как принято у нас. Ср.:

Russian style: 27,58

English style: 27.58 [twenti 'sevn point 'fifti eit]

7 Answer the questions using the new words.

1) What makes jogging such a popular exercise? 2) What good and bad habits have you got? 3) How often do you catch colds and what do you do when you have them? 4) What are some of the things you can hardly do? 5) Learning which school subjects do you do your best? 6) How much do you weigh? And what is your weight in stones? (This is the way the English measure¹ their weight.) 7) Do you put on and lose weight easily? What do you do to lose weight? 8) Some medicines can help you to lose weight. Do you think such medicines do good or harm to your body?

8 Say: a) which of these you can hardly do; b) which of these you hardly ever do.

A.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| — play the piano | — swim in winter |
| — jog in the morning | — go to museums |
| — ride a bike | — read books on ecology |
| — take photos | — wear school uniform |
| — work in the garden | — sing English songs |
| — come home late | — go to the zoo |

B.



¹ to measure ['meʒə] — измерять

**9 Hard or hardly? They are very different!**

1) I'm so tired, I can (hard/hardly) move. 2) Sofia (hard/hardly) speaks any Italian, she's never learned it. 3) The way home was long and (hard/hardly) and we returned only late at night. 4) The text is very (hard/hardly). I don't think I'll be able to read it. 5) Two more tests coming tomorrow! Isn't it a (hard/hardly) life? 6) Jack is not my friend, I (hard/hardly) know him. 7) It is raining so (hard/hardly) that soon our garden will be under water. 8) This is (hard/hardly) the time for buying new clothes: we have very little money just enough to buy food. 9) It's (hard/hardly) to understand Nina when she speaks English fast. 10) This is a very (hard/hardly) question, I don't know how to answer it.

- 10 **A.** Read the interviews and say what Andrew and Sarah do right and what they do wrong.

Two Interviews

Interview 1

I n t e r v i e w e r: Do you think you're a healthy person?

A n d r e w: Yes, I get a cold one or two times a year and that's all. And I hardly take any medicines.

I n t e r v i e w e r: And do you think that's because of what you eat and the exercise you take?

A n d r e w: Maybe. I try to eat healthy food — fruit, vegetables and lots of salad. I do my best not to overeat and seldom eat sweets or cakes or just junk food.

I n t e r v i e w e r: What about smoking? Do you smoke?

A n d r e w: No, I've never smoked at all.

I n t e r v i e w e r: Do you drink alcohol?

A n d r e w: Yes, but only wine¹. Sometimes I have it with my meals.

I n t e r v i e w e r: And do you take much exercise?

A n d r e w: I'm afraid not enough. In summer I ride a bicycle² and in winter I try to do some swimming once a week but I feel that's not enough. I'm beginning to put on weight.

Interview 2

I n t e r v i e w e r: Sarah, you look fine and healthy. Do you think you're a healthy person?

S a r a h: Well, I feel healthy. I'm not too bad.

I n t e r v i e w e r: And what about smoking? Do you smoke?


S a r a h: Yes, I still do. Not too much, two or three cigarettes a day. I know it's a bad habit. I tried to give it up but found it too hard.

I n t e r v i e w e r: Do you keep to any diet?

S a r a h: Not really because I enjoy my food too much. I like fried³ food and sweet things. It's difficult to say that my diet is healthy.

I n t e r v i e w e r: And what about exercise? Do you jog or play tennis or anything?

S a r a h: No, I'm afraid I don't. I try to walk to work and other places. So that's the only exercise I take.

B. Listen,  (63), and read the text again after it.

¹ wine — вино

² a bicycle — bike

³ fried [fraɪd] — жареный



11 A. Act out one of the interviews (ex. 10).

B. Interview one of your classmates. Ask him or her what they do to keep fit.



Focus

Русское слово «ещё» может передаваться на английский язык двумя словами: **still, yet**. При этом *still* означает «всё ещё», а *yet* — «ещё не» и употребляется в конце отрицательных предложений.

It is *still* early. — Ещё рано. (Всё ещё...)

He hasn't come *yet*. — Он ещё не пришёл. (Ещё не...)

185

Step Two

12 *Still or yet? Which word to choose?*

1) I haven't finished the book 2) John is ... sick. He doesn't go to school. 3) I ... don't understand you. Why haven't you come on time? 4) I came into the room and saw they were ... having tea. 5) I came into the room and saw that they hadn't finished having tea 6) Where is Steve? — He is ... jogging, I think. 7) Sharon has put on weight but she ... eats too many sweets. 8) I can't go with you because I'm ... busy. 9) Harris hasn't left ..., he's ... in the office. 10) Helen hasn't taken her medicine

Do It on Your Own

13 Complete the text. Use *past simple* or *past perfect*.

Yesterday I (meet) ⁽¹⁾ Betty at the bus stop. I (can) ⁽²⁾ hardly believe my eyes. Betty (change) ⁽³⁾ a lot. She (lose) ⁽⁴⁾ weight. She (become) ⁽⁵⁾ very slim. In fact, she (look) ⁽⁶⁾ young and beautiful.

14 Make up one sentence out of two. Use *after* or *before*.

1) I took the medicine. I felt a little better. 2) Jane came to the party (at 6). Nick left (at 5:30). 3) The film began (at 7). We got to the cinema (at 7:15). 4) I told my parents everything. I felt much better. 5) I learnt it by heart. I found a new poem. 6) I read one of the "Harry Potter" books. I saw the film.

Do It Together



- 1 A.** Listen to the dialogue, (64), and say if the facts are true, false or there is no information about them in the text.

- 1) Jane hasn't seen Alice for 5 years.
- 2) Alice has put on weight.
- 3) Jane keeps to a diet.
- 4) Alice doesn't take a lot of exercise.
- 5) Alice jogs in the evening.
- 6) Alice doesn't have much free time.
- 7) Alice rides a bike very well.
- 8) Jane likes sweets very much.

B. What do you think about diets? Is keeping to a diet a good idea? Give your reasons.

- 2** Match up the parts of the sentences in the two columns. Compare your results.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1) When he had painted the door, | a) he went to play football. |
| 2) After Larry had washed the car, | b) she began looking much better. |
| 3) When Rose had given up smoking, | c) Terry had washed all the plates. |
| 4) Tommy had come to school | d) it looked as good as new. |
| 5) Eric didn't come to the meeting | e) before the lesson started. |
| 6) By the time mother returned | f) because Fred hadn't phoned him. |
| 7) After Greg had finished his homework, | g) he drove to the city centre. |

- 3** Complete the texts. Use *past simple* or *past perfect* of the verbs in brackets.

A.

When we came home from grandma's yesterday, our room was in a terrible mess. We (leave) ⁽¹⁾ the window open and the wind (break) ⁽²⁾ the vase. There (be) ⁽³⁾ a lot of small pieces¹ of glass on the carpet and the carpet itself (be) ⁽⁴⁾ wet.

¹ a piece [pi:s] — кусочек

After we (paint) ⁽¹⁾ the door, we (not, put) ⁽²⁾ the boxes with paint where they belonged. We (be) ⁽³⁾ in a hurry as we (have) ⁽⁴⁾ to meet our friends at the airport at seven p.m.

When we (return) ⁽⁵⁾ home, we (see) ⁽⁶⁾ that something terrible (happen) ⁽⁷⁾. Our dog Rex (become) ⁽⁸⁾ yellow in many parts of his body. He definitely (lie) ⁽⁹⁾ on the sofa or maybe (sleep) ⁽¹⁰⁾ on it, as there (be) ⁽¹¹⁾ yellow marks all over. I (put) ⁽¹²⁾ my new white blouse on the armchair before we (leave) ⁽¹³⁾. I (not, have) ⁽¹⁴⁾ a fashionable blouse any more. Rex (touch) ⁽¹⁵⁾ it too.



Focus

1. Обратите внимание на то, как происходит перевод прямой речи (**direct speech**) в косвенную (**reported speech**), если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, употребляется в *past simple*.

(1) John said: "I live in New York."

John said (that) he lived in New York.

Bob said: "I can't swim."

Bob said he couldn't swim.

(2) Bob said: "I am learning French."

Bob said he was learning French.

We said to Tom: "We are leaving soon."

We told Tom we were leaving soon.

(3) Ann said: "Jack went home."

Ann said Jack had gone home.

Ann said to Helen: "I bought a good book."

Ann told Helen she had bought a good book.

(4) Fred said: "I have done it."

Fred explained¹ he had done it.

Jill said to Ann: "You have made a mistake."

Jill explained to Ann that she had made a mistake.

present simple

past simple

present progressive

past progressive

past simple

past perfect

present perfect

past perfect

2. *Past perfect* часто используется в косвенной речи после глаголов *said*, *told*, *asked*, *thought*, *explained*, *wondered*².

I said I had never been to India.

She asked if John had read the book.

¹ to explain [ɪk'spleɪn] — объяснять

² to wonder ['wʌndə] — интересоваться

I told them I hadn't met Andrew before.
She wondered who had left the door open.
We thought the Browns had bought a new cottage.
They explained that they had lost their keys.

4 Report what they said. Use the verbs *tell*, *explain*.

- 1) Frank said to Val: "I go jogging every morning."
- 2) Mary said to Victor: "Don has caught a cold."
- 3) David said to John: "I'm doing my best to learn it by heart."
- 4) Robert said to Polly: "It was interesting."
- 5) Alice said to Betty: "I have put on weight."
- 6) Harry said to Lena: "We have bought a new disc."
- 7) Lizzy said to Kevin: "I had a high temperature."
- 8) Sarah said to Kevin: "I don't know anything."
- 9) Rose said to Brian: "We are keeping a healthy diet."
- 10) Kate said to Ann: "I can keep your secret."



Focus

Если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, стоит в *past simple*, при переводе прямой речи в косвенную следует помнить о том, что необходимо производить определённые лексические изменения.

here → there

this → that

today → that day

ago → before

now → then

these → those

yesterday → the day before

last night (week, year) → the previous ['pri:vias] night (week, year)

5 Report what John said. Use the verbs *ask*, *wonder*, *tell*, *explain*.

Example: "How long have you been here, Paul?"

John wondered how long Paul had been there.

- 1) I am going to the cinema this afternoon.
- 2) These days we usually have lunch in the nearby café.

- 3) Jimmy has come to London today.
- 4) We had a conference on ecology yesterday.
- 5) I always stay here when I am in Glasgow.
- 6) Last week I gave up smoking.
- 7) Where did aunt Polly go last night?
- 8) Why is Sarah keeping to a diet now?
- 9) What club did Larry join three days ago?
- 10) Where were his friends last month?



- 6** Mrs Loveday wants to know what these people said. But she can't hear very well. Help her and report their words.

Example: Bob: It is dangerous to live here.
 Bob explained it was dangerous to live there.



- 1) Diana: Jane is relaxing now. She is having a holiday on the coast.
- 2) Frank: The population of the city is growing.
- 3) Mrs Crawford: We have done a lot today.
- 4) Steve: I kept a diary three years ago.
- 5) Ms Evans: These medicines are well known.
- 6) Barbara: I bought a new badge yesterday.
- 7) Mary: I worked at the factory last year.



A.

ache [eɪk] — ноющая, тупая боль, обычно не очень сильная

sneeze [sni:z] — чихать

cough [kɒf] — кашлять

pain [peɪn] — боль

painful ['reɪnfl] — причиняющий боль, болезненный

hurt [hɜ:t] — 1) ушибить, повредить; 2) причинить боль

swallow ['swɒləʊ] — глотать

examine [ɪg'zæmɪn] — осматривать

prescribe [prɪ'skraɪb] — прописывать

prescription [prɪ'skrɪpʃən] — рецепт

cure [kjʊə] — вылечить

complication [kɒmplɪ'keɪʃn] — осложнение

B.

ache: a headache, (a) backache, (a) stomachache¹. Tanya is ill, she has a high temperature and a headache.

sneeze: to sneeze badly. There was a lot of pepper in the salad and Mike began sneezing.

cough: to cough badly. Sarah is coughing badly because she has a cold. To have a bad cough. James has been ill for a week but he still has a bad cough. Laura gave a little cough and began speaking.

pain: a lot of pain, to give sb a lot of pain, to have a pain in the leg. John was having terrible pains in his left side.

painful: a painful operation, painful words. It was painful to look at the sick child.

hurt (hurt, hurt): 1) to hurt badly. I hurt my hand when I fell down. Jack hurt his foot playing football. I've hurt my toe. 2) My leg hurts. Where does it hurt, Mr Jones? — Just here, doctor. Is that shoe hurting you? — It hurts to walk.

swallow: Tim swallowed and answered the question. Irene had a cold and it hurt her to swallow.

prescribe: to prescribe some medicines for an earache. Doctor, will you prescribe sth for my headache? Alice's doctor prescribed her some antibiotics [æntɪbaɪ'ɒtɪks].

prescription: a prescription for some medicine, to write out a prescription. The doctor has written out a prescription for antibiotics. This prescription is for my headaches.

¹ a stomachache [stʌm'ækeɪk] — боль в животе

9 A. Read the dialogue and choose the right item in the sentences after it.

D r G o r d o n: Come in and sit down, Paul. What's the matter with you? You don't look your best today.

P a u l: I've got a bad headache, doctor. I've been feeling bad since yesterday night.

D r G o r d o n: Have you taken your temperature?

P a u l: No, I haven't. I never have a temperature.

D r G o r d o n: Never say never, my boy. Let's take it now. Here is a thermometer. Please tell me more. Are you sneezing or coughing? Is your nose running? Is there any pain in your chest?

P a u l: No, doctor, I don't think so. I just have this headache and it hurts me to swallow, just a little.

D r G o r d o n: Will you open your mouth wide? I'd like to see your throat. I think you're coming down with a cold, Paul, or maybe you've caught a virus.

P a u l: A virus? My younger sister has been in bed all week with a virus.

D r G o r d o n: Then it's very likely that you've got it too. Let's look at your temperature. Tut-tut. What did I tell you? Never say never. Your temperature is 37.8. I'll write out a prescription. Ask one of your parents to take it to the chemist's. You need this medicine to bring down the temperature and fight the virus.

P a u l: What else shall I do, doctor?

D r G o r d o n: Stay in bed, drink a lot of warm tea or milk, take the medicine I've prescribed and something for your headache. I'll call tomorrow afternoon and examine you again. Viruses take about a week to cure and may be dangerous because of their complications.

P a u l: Thank you for your time, Doctor.

D r G o r d o n: Get well, Paul. I'll see you tomorrow.



Do It on Your Own

194

Unit 5

11 Complete the sentences.

- 1) What do you usually take ... your headache?
- 2) Wait a second. I want to write ... two or three prescriptions for you.
- 3) What's the matter? — I'm afraid I'm coming down ... a cold.
- 4) I hope this medicine will be able to bring ... your temperature.
- 5) What do doctors usually prescribe ... earache?
- 6) Cough sweets can cure you ... a painfully sore throat.
- 7) What's this prescription ...? — My painful coughing.
- 8) I have a bad pain ... my chest. What shall I do?

12 Write a short story about how you came down with a cold.

Step Four

Do It Together

1 Listen, (67), and match the names with the pictures.



- Philip Mary Mr Green Mr Smith
June Bill Jack Peter
Max Kevin Don Miss Armstrong



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



12.



9.



10.



11.

2 Paraphrase these:

- 1) to have a pain in the back
- 2) to have a pain in the stomach
- 3) to have a pain in the ear
- 4) to have a pain in the head
- 5) to have a pain in the tooth

3 How do you know that you are coming down with a cold? What do you usually do to get better?

4 Yesterday Richard felt he was coming down with a cold. He went to see his doctor. Read the dialogue and then report the doctor's questions and Richard's answers. Use the verbs *to ask*, *to explain*, *to say*, *to tell*, *to think*, *to wonder*.

Doctor: Next, please. Ah, good morning, Richard. What can I do for you today?

Richard: Well, doctor, I have a running nose and it hurts to swallow.

Doctor: I see. And your cough sounds bad. How long have you had it? When did you begin coughing like that?

Richard: Sorry, I don't remember, doctor.



Doctor: All right. Let me take your temperature first. Oh, you're running a temperature, Richard. I think you have got a virus.

Richard: What can I take to bring down the temperature, doctor?

Doctor: Well, I am going to prescribe some medicine for your temperature. Take this medicine three times a day after meals¹.

Richard: Thank you, doctor. Goodbye.

Doctor: Goodbye, Richard. Next, please.



Focus

Обратите внимание на изменения, которые происходят в глагольных формах при переводе предложений из прямой речи в косвенную, если глагол, который вводит прямую речь, стоит в **past simple**.

Kevin said: "I have been coughing for a week." present perfect progressive

Kevin explained he had been coughing for a week. past perfect progressive

Alice asked Bob: "How long have you been taking this medicine?" present perfect progressive

Alice wondered how long Bob had been taking that medicine. }
 Alice asked Bob how long he had been taking that medicine. } past perfect progressive

- 5** A lot of patients² came to see Dr Morrison last Friday. They all had had some problems for some time. Report what Dr Morrison said about his patients' problems. Use the verbs *to explain*, *to think*.

Example: Dr Morrison said: "John has been sneezing for two days."

Dr Morrison explained (thought) John had been sneezing for two days.

1) Dr Morrison said: "Jane has been coughing for a week."

2) Dr Morrison said: "Alice has been taking aspirin for three days."

3) Dr Morrison said: "Bob's leg has been hurting him for a month."

4) Dr Morrison said: "Mrs Gatewood has been putting on weight for a year."

¹ after meals [mi:lz] — после еды

² a patient [peɪʃənt] — пациент

5) Dr Morrison said: "Mr Williams has been overworking himself for a long time."

6) Dr Morrison said: "Ms Sandford has been trying to give up smoking for four months."

6 Say what questions Dr Morrison asked his patients.

Example: Dr Morrison wanted to know if his patient was coughing.

— Are you coughing?

1) Dr Morrison wondered how long his patient had been coughing.

2) Dr Morrison asked if his patient often had headaches.

3) Dr Morrison wanted to know if his patient was feeling worse.

4) Dr Morrison wondered if his patient had had any pain in that side before.

5) Dr Morrison asked how long his patient had been keeping to a diet of vegetables and fruit.

6) Dr Morrison asked why his patient hadn't come to see him earlier.

7) Dr Morrison wanted to know how long his patient had been overworking himself.

8) Dr Morrison asked what medicines his patient had been taking.

9) Dr Morrison wondered who had prescribed those medicines.

10) Dr Morrison wondered if the medicines were helping.

7 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen, (68), and repeat.

A.

pastime ['pɑ:staim] — времяпровождение

team [ti:m] — команда

support [sə'pɔ:t] — 1) *n* поддержка; 2) *v* поддерживать

race [reɪs] — 1) *n* гонка, бег на скорость; 2) *v* участвовать в гонке, в состязании на скорость; бегать наперегонки

climb [klaɪm] — 1) *n* подъём, восхождение; 2) *v* лазить, подниматься

advantage [əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ] — преимущество

thrill [θrɪl] — 1) *n* дрожь, трепет, восторг; 2) *v* заставить трепетать

excitement [ɪk'saɪtmənt] — возбуждение, волнение

score [skɔ:z] — 1) *n* счёт (*в игре*); 2) *v* выиграть (*очко*), забить (*гол*)



pastime: an unusual pastime, Mary's favourite pastime. We played word games in the car as a pastime during the long drive.

team: a football team, a popular team, a famous team. A football match is between two teams of players.

support: 1) to support the government, to support each other, to support the family. Mr Donovan has to support a large family. Do many people support that candidate? Which football team do you support? 2) to show support, to give support. My friends gave me real support during the difficult times.

race: 1) an important race, a difficult race, famous motor races (horse races). Our horse won the race. 2) to race someone. The two children raced each other to school. Will you race me to that tree?

climb: 1) A long climb up the mountain. The trip includes a climb up the volcano. 2) to climb the mountains, to climb the hills. The boys climbed the tree and fell down.

advantage: an advantage, to give an advantage, to have an advantage over sb, to get an advantage. The home team always have an advantage over their opponents. Quick thinking is an advantage in many professions.

thrill: a great thrill, a pleasant thrill; to give (get) a thrill. Seeing the ocean for the first time gave me a great thrill. It was a thrill to see the famous runner in person.

excitement: real excitement, great excitement. We could hardly sleep because of our excitement about starting the trip tomorrow. There was great excitement when the teacher told us about the coming trip.

score: 1) The final score. What's the score? The final score was 5 to 4. 2) to score a point (some points), to score a goal (some goals). I scored twenty points in the game. Who scored the goal?

8 Match the items in the two columns.

- | | |
|---|------------|
| 1) what you like to do when you are not working | a) climb |
| 2) a group of people who play sports together on one side | b) support |
| 3) to move up, down or across sth using hands and feet | c) race |
| 4) to help | d) team |
| 5) to run to find out who is (the) fastest | e) pastime |

A. Read the text and decide which of these titles is the best for it.

- a) Sport and People
- b) Popular Sports
- c) Sport and Health

Sport is one of the most popular pastimes all over the world. Lots of people watch sports programmes on television, support their teams at stadiums [ˈsteɪdiəmz] and go in for different kinds of sport. Some sports are common, others are not. It is difficult to find a person who has not heard about such team games as football or basketball or such athletics [æθˈletiks] as running and jumping. At the same time there are sports and games that are less common, for example motor races, rock climbing and parachute [ˈpærəʃu:t] jumping are not to everyone's taste¹.

Going in for sport gives you a lot of advantages. It gives you physical [ˈfɪzɪkəl] exercise, you spend a lot of time in the open air, you meet people who enjoy the same sport. Just think of the excitement of the moment when your favourite footballer scores a goal at the last moment of the match.

B. Look at the pictures and match them with the names of sports and games.



1.



2.



3.



4.

¹ are not to everyone's taste – not everybody likes them



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



12.



13.



14.

Sports

- a) boxing
- b) cycling
- c) long jumping
- d) figure skating
- e) weight lifting
- f) judo
- g) water skiing

Games

- h) golf
- i) baseball
- j) ice hockey
- k) volleyball
- l) badminton
- m) water polo
- n) rugby

C. Read the text again and say which of these facts are not in it.

- 1) Sport is an activity that most people know of and enjoy.
- 2) The most popular sports in England.
- 3) Some sports are more popular than others.
- 4) Sports that are more useful than others.
- 5) Why people go in for sport.
- 6) Some of the best-known athletes.



Слово **sport** означает спортивную деятельность в самом широком смысле, в этом значении это существительное является неисчисляемым.

Do you like sport? Going in for sport is very good for children.

У слова **sport** есть и другое значение — «вид спорта». В этом значении оно исчисляемое.

Football is a popular sport. Basketball has always been one of school sports.

В функции определения перед существительным всегда используйте форму **sports**: sports jacket, sports club, sports news.

10 In what sports do they use them?

- 1) balls: big balls, smaller balls
- 2) skates
- 3) rackets
- 4) racing cars
- 5) horses

11 A. Answer the questions.

- 1) What traditional Russian games do you know?
- 2) What sports and games are the most popular in Russia now?
- 3) What sports are new or uncommon in this country?
- 4) What summer and winter sports do you know?
- 5) What sports would you enjoy most? Why?
- 6) What famous Russian and foreign athletes do you know? In what sports did they become famous?
- 7) What sports are the most dangerous and the least dangerous?
- 8) What water sports do you know?
- 9) What team games do teenagers¹ usually play in Russian schools?
- 10) Why is it necessary for teenagers to go in for sport?
- 11) Are there enough stadiums, gyms and swimming pools in the place where you live?
- 12) What can local and national governments do to make sport more popular?

B. Explain why sport is so important for everybody.

¹ a teenager ['ti:neɪdʒə] — подросток

Do It on Your Own

- 12** This is what Julia, a famous sportswoman, said about herself in an interview. Report it to your friends.

Example: Julia said she had always liked sport.

I have always liked sport. I have been skating for about ten years now. I have won some medals and prizes. At this moment I am preparing for something very important. I am going to skate for my town. My friends and I hope to win again. We have been training for two months very hard. I think we are in good form.

- 13** Write these in English.

Иметь преимущество перед своим другом, взбираться на гору, забить гол, выиграть очко, настоящее волнение, скачки, моё любимое времяпровождение, вызвать трепет (возбуждение), поддерживать друг друга, трудные гонки, бежать с Анной наперегонки, получить настоящую поддержку, трудное восхождение.

Step Five

Do It Together

- 1** A. Listen, (69), and say if the facts about Laila Ali are *true*, *false* or *there is no information about them*.



- 1) Muhammad Ali is a famous boxer.
- 2) He has 9 children.
- 3) He doesn't like the idea of women boxers.
- 4) People were very interested in Laila's first fight.
- 5) Muhammad Ali came to see his daughter's first fight.
- 6) April Fowler was Laila's opponent during the first fight.
- 7) Laila's first fight lasted less than a minute.
- 8) Laila has a talent for boxing.

B. Should there be sports for men only? What sports? Why (not)?





We Shall Overcome¹

We shall overcome, we shall overcome,

We shall overcome some day.

Oh, deep in my heart²

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.

We shall live in peace, we shall live in peace,

We shall live in peace some day.

Oh, deep in my heart

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.

We'll walk hand in hand, we'll walk hand in hand,

We'll walk hand in hand some day.

Oh, deep in my heart

I do believe

That we shall overcome some day.



Focus

При описании занятий различными видами спорта в английском языке часто используется структура **to do sth.**

to do boxing

to do high jumping

to do water skiing

to do jumping

to do figure skating

to do horse riding

to do long jumping

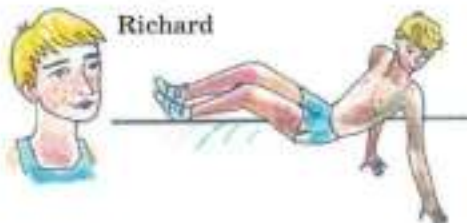
to do weightlifting

3 Say what it thrills the teenagers to do.

Example: It thrills Bob to do mountain climbing.



Jane



Richard

¹ to overcome [ˌəʊvəˈkʌm] — преодолеть, победить

² a heart [hɑ:t] — сердце



Bob



Sarah



Philip



Doris



Helen



William



4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer. Report what your partner has said.

- Do you take enough exercise? What exercise? How often do you go to the stadium? to the swimming pool?
- What is your favourite pastime? Have you ever tried to do mountain climbing? When was it? Do you like playing football? Are you a member of the school team? Do you support your school team when they play?
- Do you go in for sport? What sport? Does it thrill you to watch motor races? horse races? Do you know any favourite sportsmen or sportswomen?
- Do you think about your diet? Do you eat things that are good (bad) for you? Do you have enough sleep? Do you take a lot of medicine? Are you healthy? How often do you see your doctor?



Focus

Обратите внимание, что при переводе предложений, содержащих **future simple**, из прямой речи в косвенную вспомогательные глаголы *will* и *shall* изменяются соответственно на *would* и *should*, если глагол в основном предложении употребляется в *past simple*.

John said: "I will have an advantage over Bob."

John said he would have an advantage over Bob.

We said: "We will (shall) win the game."

We said we would (should) win the game.

Alice said: "I will race Pat to the tree."

Alice said she would race Pat to the tree.

future simple

future-in-the-past

future simple

future-in-the-past

future simple

future-in-the-past

5 Report what they said. Use these verbs.

tell wonder think want (to know)

Jenny said: "I will play water polo next Sunday."

Peter said: "We shall support our team tomorrow."

John said: "I will do a lot of physical exercise soon."

Val said: "I will go to the stadium in the evening."

Robert asked: "Shall we go cycling on Saturday?"

Mr Cook asked: "Will they play rugby next week?"

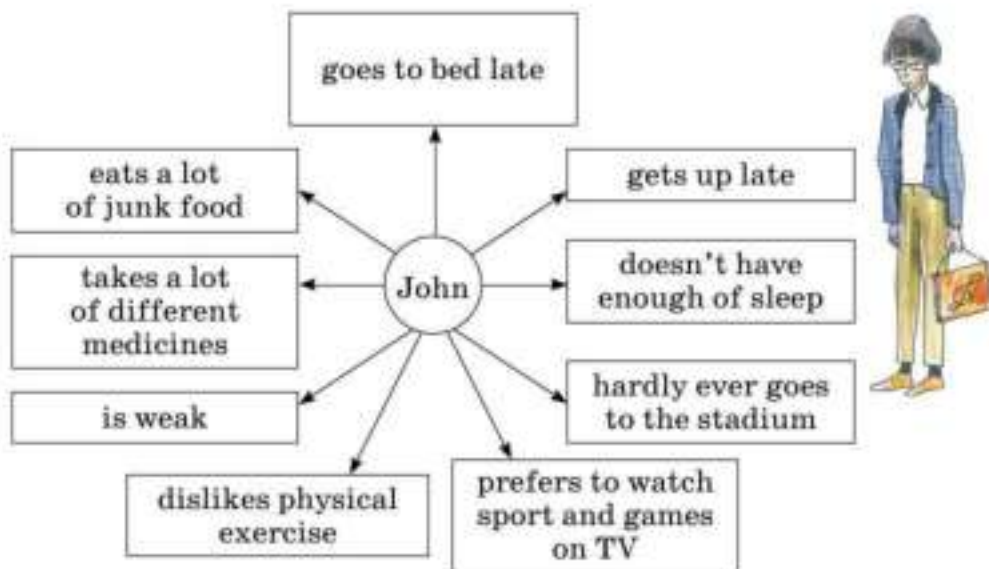
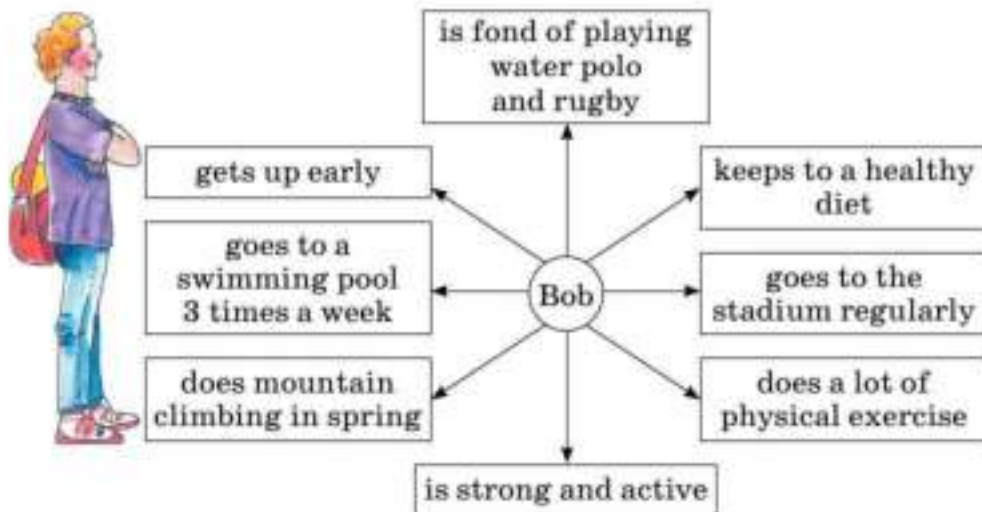
Mrs Evans asked: "Where shall we meet?"

Miss Ford said: "Who will win the game?"

Ms Cox asked: "Who will play golf?"

6 Bob and John have different lifestyles¹. Which of them do you think has an advantage and why?

Example: Bob has an advantage over John because Bob is strong and active and John is weak.



¹ lifestyle ['laɪfstɑɪl] — образ жизни

competition: an important competition, to win the competition. Our team was in competition with three others. I think I'll enter the swimming competition.

performance: an evening performance, an afternoon performance, the actor's performance. We all enjoyed last night's performance of the school play. His performance of/as Othello [ə'θeləʊ] was very good.

event: an important event. The first day at school is a big event in a child's life. The next event will be the high jump.

war: at war, to start a war, to go to war. In 1775 England was at war with her American colonies. They were a warlike nation.

peace: Peace on the planet is very important for all of us.

hero: to become a hero, a national hero. The winners of the Olympic Games are national heroes.

organize: to organize a meeting, to organize a trip. Our teacher has organized a class trip to Stratford-upon-Avon.

organization: She is busy with the organization of her daughter's party. The letters UNO stand for the United Nations Organization.

noble: a noble person, a noble profession, a noble family, noble thoughts. Mr Patrik Morgan comes from a noble family.

field: a green field, in the field, on a football field. We could see a farmer in the field. The players have just come out onto the football field.

battle: to fight a battle, the Battle of Trafalgar. Battles happen during wars. The two armies fought a battle.

honour: a great honour, a big honour. He is a man of honour. It is a great honour to meet you.

take part in: Who will take part in the swimming competition? John hardly ever takes part in our meetings.

take place: The meeting took place on 17 March. What took place after the performance?



Focus

Обратите внимание на употребление предлогов со словом **field**.

in the field — на поле

on the football field — на футбольном поле

on the battle field — на поле боя

9 Use the new words and complete the sentences.

1) Our team will c... with the best athletes of the town. 2) Who will take p... in our concert? 3) All the people of Russia remember the b... of Stalingrad which took p... in 1943. 4) I have never seen any international boating c... . 5) Where shall we go after the p...? 6) The two countries have never been at w... . 7) Many people say that Pavel Bure is our national h... . 8) Andrei Dmitrievich Saharov was a man of h... . 9) We drove past large green f...s and could see bright yellow dandelions here and there. 10) What do you know about the B... of Trafalgar? about the B... of Waterloo? 11) Mahatma Gandhi, the n... leader of the Indian people, is famous all over the world. 12) Have you read "W... and P..." by Leo Tolstoy? 13) The a... castle gave the city of Newcastle its name. 14) "Greenpeace" is a world-famous ecological o... .

209

Step Five



10 A. The text "The Olympic Games" falls into two parts. Read the text and make up titles for these parts.



The Olympic Games

a) ...

The Olympic Games are an international sports festival that began in ancient Greece. In those days Greek games took place every four years. They included not only sports competitions but also competitions in music, oratory¹ and theatre performances. The earliest information about the Olympic Games goes back to 776 BC, but historians think that the Games began long before that. The ancient Olympics had only one athletic event — a footrace or a race for runners of about 183 metres (the length of the stadium). Only men could compete or watch the Games. During the Games there was peace in the country. When the powerful, warlike² Spartans began to compete, they changed the programme of the Games and included more sports in it. The winners of the Games became national heroes. The Roman emperor³ Theodosius [θə'dəʊsjəs] ended the Olympics in 394 AD because he thought that they were a pagan⁴ festival.



b) ...

In the 19th century the French nobleman Pierre de Coubertin [ˈpjɛr də ˈkʊbɜ:tən] got the idea to bring the Olympic Games back to life. With the help of the people who supported him he organized the first modern Olympic Games in 1896. They were a success. Athletes from thirteen countries came to Greece to compete in nine sports. Russia took part in them, too. Now the number of countries taking part in the Olympic Games is much larger and so is the number of sports in which athletes compete. Like in ancient times, the Olympic Games take place every four years, yet in 1926 the tradition of the Winter Olympic Games also began. The noble idea of the Olympic Games is to make all people friends by competing on football fields, courts and stadiums.

¹ **oratory** [ˈɒrətəri] — ораторское искусство

² **warlike** = liking war

³ **an emperor** [ˈempeɪə] — император

⁴ **pagan** [ˈpeɪɡən] — языческий

The International Olympic Committee [kə'miti] (IOC) heads the Olympic movement. Among other things the Committee chooses the place for the coming Olympics. It is a great honour for a city to become an Olympic one.

The Olympic Games are probably the most important international sports event. Millions of people watch them, supporting their favourite teams and athletes. Many things have changed but like in ancient times winners of the Olympics become national heroes in their countries.

B. Listen,  (72), and read the text again after it.

211

Step Five



11 A. Read the text "The Olympic Games" again and make up questions to which these are answers.

- 1) ...? — In ancient Greece.
- 2) ...? — Every four years.
- 3) ...? — No. They also included competitions in music, oratory and theatre performances.
- 4) ...? — Only one. It was a footrace.
- 5) ...? — In 394 AD.
- 6) ...? — Because he believed that they were unchristian.
- 7) ...? — His name was Pierre de Coubertin.
- 8) ...? — Yes. He had some supporters.
- 9) ...? — In 1896.
- 10) ...? — In Greece.
- 11) ...? — The IOC.
- 12) ...? — They choose the city for the next Olympics.

B. Why do you think a lot of countries want to host Olympic Games?

12 A. What were ancient Olympic Games like and what are modern Olympic Games like? Compare them.

Example: In ancient times only one country took part in the Olympic Games. Now a lot of countries do it.

B. Do you know anything about the latest¹ Olympic Games? Together with your classmates remember:

- when and in what city they took place
- which of the countries won the most medals

¹ latest ['leɪtɪst] — последние, недавние

- what athletes were successful
- how good the Russian team was
- what competition or match you remember best and why

C. Has Russia ever hosted Olympic Games? Is it going to? What do you know about them?



Social English

13 A. Learn to make proposals and react to them.

Making proposals

- Let's watch the final match on TV.
- What/How about playing a game of tennis?
- I feel like jogging this morning, will you join me?
- Why don't you play for the school team?
- Why not take part in this race?

Saying yes

- I'd love to (do it).
- I'd be glad to (do it).
- I'd like that very much.
- That sounds good.
- OK.
- All right.
- With pleasure [ˈpleʒə].

Saying no

- I'm afraid I can't.
- I'd love to but I'm afraid I can't.
- I'm sorry but I really can't.

B. Work with a partner. Make a proposal. Say yes or no.

Your idea is that:

- he/she should spend a quiet evening at home
- you both should play a game of chess
- he/she should start doing some physical exercise
- he/she should learn to play baseball
- you both should watch the hockey match on TV
- he/she should join the school athletic club
- he/she should take part in the 100-metre race
- he/she should take pictures of the skiing competition
- you both should try to keep fit

Unit 6



Our Favourite Pastimes

Step One

Do It Together

1 A. Listen, (73), and put the right names into these sentences.



Their Free Time

- 1) ... does maths after school.
- 2) ... has very little free time because there are two young children in the house.
- 3) ... meets friends at weekends.
- 4) ... does a lot of sport.
- 5) ... likes to spend free time with friends.
- 6) ... travels about the country at weekends.

B. Do you think a hobby can influence your future life? In what way? Give examples.



You and Your Free Time

- How much free time do you have?
 - more than 3 hours a day
 - between 1 and 3 hours a day
 - less than 1 hour a day
- Do you budget¹ your free time?
 - yes
 - no
 - sometimes
- In what way do you prefer to spend your free time?

a) stay indoors and relax	f) do sport
b) watch TV and video films	g) spend it on self-education
c) read books	h) spend it on your family
d) meet your friends	i) spend it some other way
e) travel	
- What is your usual pastime or pastimes?
- Are you happy about the way you spend your free time?
 - yes
 - no
 - not always
- What would you like to change?



Focus

The Passive Voice²

Все уже известные вам глагольные формы были использованы в так называемом активном залоге (**the active voice**), когда глагол показывает, что действие выполняется лицом или предметом, выраженным подлежащим.

Richard broke the window yesterday.

Susan wrote the project last Sunday.

Однако обычно, когда говорящий либо не знает, кто совершает действие, либо не придаёт этому значения, в предложении используется страдательный залог (**the passive voice**). В английском языке страдательный залог образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола *to be* и третьей формы основного глагола.

¹ **to budget** ['bʌdʒɪt] — распределять

² **the passive voice** — страдательный залог

Для прошедшего времени это:

was/were translated = был/были переведены

was/were played = был/были сыграны

was/were shown = был/были показаны

was/were read = был/были прочитаны

Если же возникает необходимость назвать лицо, которое совершает действие, пользуются предлогом *by*.

The book was written *by* Joanne Rowling.

Обратите внимание, что одно и то же предложение в страдательном залоге может переводиться на русский язык по-разному.

The letter was sent last evening.

1) Письмо было отослано вчера вечером. 2) Письмо отослали вчера вечером.

3 Translate these sentences into Russian.

1) The castle was built in the 17th century. 2) The books were brought from the library. 3) The lunch was eaten in no time. 4) These cameras were made in Japan. 5) The English language was spoken only in England in the 16th century. 6) The living room was cleaned an hour ago. 7) Two bottles of mineral water were drunk because it was very hot. 8) The vegetables were brought in the morning. 9) The boy was asked to come back at 9 p.m. 10) The work was done at once. 11) America was discovered in 1492.

4 Change the sentences in *the active voice* into *passive*.

Example: The team played the match very well.

The match was played very well (by the team).

1) John found a small silver box in the garden. 2) Mr Morrison hung the picture on the wall. 3) Jason learnt the poem by heart. 4) Our school football team won the final match with the score 5:2. 5) The girls did the exercises after classes. 6) Barbara took these pictures while travelling in Africa. 7) Jane chose the blue dress because it was longer. 8) Mr Harrison built the cottage at the beginning of the 19th century. 9) Alice cut the cake into small pieces. 10) Mrs Biggs kept the old letters in a small green box.

5 Look at the sentences and say how negations and questions are made in *the passive voice*.



The floor **was not cleaned** last night.
The cars **were not washed** in the evening.



Was the book **bought** last weekend?
Were the churches **built** last century?



When **were** the apples **bought**?
Where **was** the car **made**?
Why **were** the letters **burnt**?

6 Disagree¹ with the statements. Correct them using *the passive voice*.

Example: The teacher collected the projects. I not the teacher, the students

— No, he didn't. The projects were not collected by the teacher, they were collected by the students.

1) Professor Jackson informed everybody about the lecture.

not Professor Jackson, Professor Davidson

2) John broke their mother's favourite vase.

not John, Florence

3) Little Sarah built a small sandcastle on the beach.

not Sarah, little Alice

4) Emma painted the door yellow.

not Emma, her little brother Steve

5) Tourists killed a lot of dodos.

not tourists, sailors

6) Marion took two eggs from the fridge.

not Marion, Sharon

7) Henry scored the last goal in the game.

not Henry, Max

8) Mr Jason preferred Plan A to Plan B.

not Plan A, Plan B

9) Miss Harper included Tom on the list.

not Tom, Boris

¹ to disagree [disə'gri:] — не соглашаться, возражать

7 Ask questions to get more information about these facts. Give answers.

Example: Kevin's plan was supported.

When was his plan supported?

Where was his plan supported?

By whom was the plan supported?

Why was the plan supported?

Last week.

At the Congress.

By everyone.

It was really good.

- 1) The poem was written.
- 2) The sandcastle was built.
- 3) The story was told.
- 4) The new land was discovered.
- 5) Some species of animals were killed.
- 6) A lot of historic facts were remembered.
- 7) The trees were cut down.
- 8) A lot of power stations were built.
- 9) Some rivers were polluted.
- 10) Some money was collected.

8 Work in pairs. Ask and answer.

You want to know:

- 1) when America was discovered

a) 1392	b) 1492	c) 1429
---------	---------	---------
- 2) on what continents rainforests were mostly destroyed

a) Europe	c) North America	
b) Australia	d) South America	e) Asia
- 3) when "Eugene Onegin" was written

a) 1823—1831	b) 1832—1837	c) 1810—1819
--------------	--------------	--------------
- 4) when Moscow was founded¹

a) 1047	b) 1147	c) 1417
---------	---------	---------
- 5) when the electron was discovered

a) 1807	b) 1877	c) 1897
---------	---------	---------
- 6) when the Second World War was finished

a) 1945	b) 1948	c) 1946
---------	---------	---------
- 7) who "Robinson Crusoe" was written by

a) Daniel Defoe	b) Jonathan Swift	c) Rudyard Kipling
-----------------	-------------------	--------------------

¹ to found [faʊnd] — основывать

- 8) when the first clock was made
 a) in the early Middle Ages
 b) in the late Middle Ages
 c) in ancient times
- 9) where the Eiffel Tower was built
 a) Dijon b) Lyon c) Paris
- 10) by whom "The Mona Lisa" was painted
 a) Michelangelo [ˌmaɪkəl'ændʒələʊ]
 b) Leonardo da Vinci [liːəˌnɑːdəʊ də 'vɪntʃi]
 c) Raffaello Santi [ˌræfæˈrɛləʊː 'sænti]
- 11) when "The Mona Lisa" was painted
 a) 1603 b) 1403 c) 1503
- 12) when the first plane was flown by the Wright brothers
 a) 1903 b) 1913 c) 1923

- 9 Listen, (74), and read what these people say about their interests. Whose interests do you share?¹

Hi! I'm Nina. I go to school in St Petersburg. My school is not usual. We study a lot of chemistry and biology. Biology is my favourite subject. I have always been interested in wildlife. After school I spend most of my time in the club. We call ourselves "Young Biologists". We meet two times a week to discuss some interesting problems. During school holidays we go to different places where we can watch wildlife and study their ecology. I keep some pets at home too. I like playing with them and looking after² them.



I'm Mark. I live in Liverpool, England. My hobby is music. We have the Beatles Museum in Liverpool which I have visited many times. I have a big collection of books about the musicians and a lot of their recordings³. I think there is nothing that I don't know about the



¹ to share [ʃeə] — разделять

² to look after — заботиться

³ a recording — запись



group. Of all the musicians I like John Lennon most. He had many hit songs. Lennon was killed in 1980 by a mad¹ fanatic. But people in different countries remember him.

Hi there! I'm Andy Scott. I come from Sacramento, California, USA. I think I spend all my free time playing basketball. I play for the school team and they say that I'm one of the best players. I go to the stadium to watch basketball games with my dad or with my friends. I support the LA Lakers, they are the best team in the NBA². If I can ever play for Lakers, I'll be the happiest person in the world.



My name is Denis. I live in Vladivostok, in the east of Russia. My hobby is computers. I got a computer two years ago and now I spend a lot of my free time in front of it. Sometimes my friends and I go to the Internet café and surf the net³. I used to play a lot of computer games but now I think they are rather boring. Using the computer helps me with my school as I can get all the information I need from the Internet.



I'm Julia and I come from Scotland. I have a hobby that is not very common nowadays — I read books. Very few of my classmates do any reading at all. They prefer television or videos, but I love reading a lot. I go to the local library and read books there. I'm very lucky because my parents have a good home library and I can take any book I like. My friends call me a bookworm⁴, but they like it when I tell them what I have read in books. I think I could spend all my life reading. That's the most exciting pastime I can think of.



¹ **mad** — безумный, сумасшедший

² **NBA** — National Basketball Association

³ **to surf the net** — to move from site to site on the Internet

⁴ **a bookworm** ['bʊkwɜ:m] — книжный червь

10 Speak about your hobby or favourite pastime and find out who else in your class is interested in the same activity.

I have always been interested in
I spend a lot of time (doing something)
I have a big collection of
There is very little that I don't know about
It's a rather (un)common hobby.
I think it's an exciting pastime.



221

Step One



Do It on Your Own

11 *The active voice or the passive voice?*

1. a) Cristopher Columbus (discover) America in 1492. b) Nobody knows when this fact (discover).
2. a) The Post Office Tower in London (build) in 1964. b) It (build) to make the telephone and television systems of the British capital better. c) Who (build) the Tretyakov Gallery in Moscow?
3. a) The small island (not, show) on the map. b) Mrs Pitkin (not, show) me her garden when I came to visit her.
4. a) Mr Woodriff (paint) very good portraits when he was younger. b) A lot of strange animals (paint) on the wall. We couldn't see all of them.
5. Jonathan Swift (write) "Gulliver's Travels" in the 18th century, "Battle of the Books" (write) by him too.

12 Write these sentences in *the passive voice*.

- 1) People grew this coffee in Brazil.
- 2) Someone made this piano in the 18th century.
- 3) Somebody sent a Christmas postcard to me.
- 4) Somebody bought a lot of vegetables and put them in the fridge.
- 5) Andrew took us to the living room.
- 6) People killed the last dodo many years ago.
- 7) They built a new hospital in our city last month.
- 8) People translated this book into many languages.
- 9) They taught reading in the first form.

Do It Together

- 1 A.** Listen to the text, (75), about William Shakespeare and his home town and say which facts are *true, false or not mentioned*¹ in it.

- 1) William Shakespeare was born in 1546.
- 2) One of William's grandfathers was a farmer.
- 3) William's family was not poor.
- 4) William went to a grammar school.
- 5) In the 16th century Stratford was a rather small town.
- 6) There were about 2,000 houses in it.
- 7) Stratford stands on a river.
- 8) The name of the river is Avon.
- 9) Now Stratford is a tourist centre.
- 10) The house where William Shakespeare was born is a museum now.
- 11) In the museum one can see not only some 16th century books but also a collection of 16th century clothes.
- 12) The museum garden is not a usual one.



B. Why do you think Shakespeare is still remembered? What modern authors will be remembered in 400 years?

- 2** On Saturday the Greens had lots of things to do. They worked very hard and at the end of the day everything was done. What was done by the Greens?

Example: Mr Green spent two hours washing the car, so the car was washed.

- 1) Mr Green spent the afternoon making a bench, so
- 2) Mrs Green spent a lot of time planting the flowers and cutting the grass, so
- 3) Jake Green spent an hour and a half painting the garage, so
- 4) Margo Green spent three hours cleaning the windows in the house, so

¹ to mention [ˈmenʃən] — упоминать

2. Someone showed me a new dictionary. — Кто-то показал мне новый словарь.

A new dictionary was shown to me.
I was shown a new dictionary. } — Мне показали новый словарь.

При этом второй вариант является более употребительным.

Ср.: I was told a very interesting story. — Мне рассказали очень интересную историю.

They were asked about the score of the game. — Их спросили о счёте игры.

Sarah was given two sweets. — Саре дали две конфеты.

Bob was shown the new library. — Бобу показали новую библиотеку.

4 Read the sentences and say how *present simple passive* is formed. Then translate the sentences into Russian.

(+) I **am told** to come back at 5.
Coffee **is grown** in Brazil.
Butter and cheese **are made** from milk.

(-) African languages **are not** usually **taught** in Russian schools.
I **am not included** in the team.
This poem **is not translated** into French.


(?) **Are** the Hobsons **invited** to your party?
Is English **spoken** here?

(Wh?) Why **are** you **asked** to go there?
What kind of music **is played** at Christmas in your country?

5 Change *the active voice* into *passive*.

- 1) We form the passive voice with the help of the verb *to be*.
- 2) People grow oranges in Italy.
- 3) They build a lot of new houses in our country.
- 4) People often make tables of plastic ['plæstɪk].
- 5) They translate the Harry Potter books into many languages.
- 6) They don't teach foreign languages at this primary school.
- 7) They don't show such films on TV.
- 8) My granny doesn't grow tomatoes here.

- 9) People don't build tall buildings on this island.
 10) What questions does your teacher usually ask you in class?
 11) Do you hear such melodies here?
 12) What books do they usually buy for their children?
 13) Does Mr Ross usually invite his neighbours to his parties?
 14) What poems do the pupils learn by heart in the 8th form?

6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words. Listen,  (76), and repeat.

A.

entertainment [ˌentə'teɪnmənt] — развлечение

act [ækt] — 1) действовать, поступать; 2) играть в пьесе или фильме

possible ['pɒsəbl] — возможный

impossible [ɪm'pɒsəbl] — невозможный

god [gɒd] — бог

recite [rɪ'saɪt] — декламировать, читать наизусть

introduce [ˌɪntrə'dju:s] — представлять кого-либо, вводить куда-то

circus ['sɜ:kəs] — цирк

connect [kə'nekt] — соединять, подключать

consider [kən'sɪdə] — считать, полагать (*рассматривать, тщательно обдумывать*)

appear [ə'pɪə] — появляться

play [pleɪ] — пьеса

audience ['ɔ:diəns] — аудитория, публика, зрители

as well — также, тоже

by and by — постепенно

B.

entertainment: real entertainment, the usual entertainment, the world of entertainment, to enjoy entertainment. I think all people enjoy entertainment. Let's take a look at the world of entertainment. Cinema is the entertainment of the 20th century.

act: to act as sb, to act quickly, to act in a performance. We have talked enough, it's time to act. Helen sometimes acts as her father's secretary. A famous actor, a popular actress.

possible: a possible visit, it is possible that..., if (it is) possible, as soon as possible, when/whenever possible, where/wherever possible. Everything is possible. I relax with a good book wherever possible.

impossible: impossible children. It is impossible for elephants to fly.

god: In ancient Greece people had a lot of gods. Mars was the Roman god of war.



God (no plural): God is the being who made the world and controls all things.

recite: to recite a poem, to recite a dialogue. Alice had to recite her poem in front of her class.

introduce: to introduce sb to somebody, to introduce actors to a play. My parents introduced me to their guests. Let me introduce myself. He introduced himself as Doctor Desmond Morton.

circus: to go to the circus, to take sb to the circus. My little granddaughter asks me to take her to the circus again.

connect: to connect sth to/with sth (sb), to connect the printer to the computer, to connect the two farms. How are you connected with the business? We are not connected to the Internet.

consider: to consider facts, to consider doing sth. Max is considering my idea. I'm seriously considering leaving the company. Professor Harvey is considered (to be) a real expert.

appear: to appear on television (in the film), to appear from the room, to appear from behind the tree. One day a stranger appeared on my doorstep.

disappear: to disappear suddenly. The sun disappeared behind the clouds.

reappear = to appear again.

play: a modern play, a funny play, an exciting play. People believe that Shakespeare wrote 37 plays.

audience: an unusual audience, a thankful audience, a young audience. Audiences all over the world loved Chaplin's films.


offer: to offer entertainment, to offer a cup of coffee, to offer to help. They haven't offered me the job yet. We'll be happy to offer you all the help we can.

as well = too = also. Buy some potatoes, please, and some carrots as well.

by and by = after a short time. By and by they got to know each other.

7 Complete the rows of words.

A.
 (a) possible  answer

to act  in a circus

to introduce — a writer

to connect — nations

to recite — a text

to consider — the problem

to offer — help

to appear — in a play

B.

- 1) real (..., ..., ...) entertainment
- 2) a sad (..., ..., ...) play
- 3) a fantastic (..., ..., ...) offer
- 4) a wonderful (..., ..., ...) audience



Focus

Вы уже знаете, что русские слова «тоже», «также» в английском языке соответствуют разным единицам — **too** и **also**. Это же значение могут передавать единицы **as well**, **either** [ˈaɪðə].

1. Когда мы просим кого-либо что-то сделать (или требуем это), следует использовать слова *too* или *as well*. *Also* в подобных случаях не употребляется.

Open the door, and open the window as well/too.

2. И *too*, и *as well* всегда употребляются в конце предложения.

My sister speaks English, too. My sister speaks English as well.

3. *Also* обычно употребляется в середине предложения, либо перед основным глаголом, либо после вспомогательного глагола или после глагола *to be*.

He also speaks English. She can also speak English.

He is also a fine actor.

Иногда *also* может использоваться в начале предложения.

John goes in for swimming. Also he often plays basketball.

4. Обычно *also* не используется в отрицательных предложениях. В этом случае употребляется слово *either*.

I don't know him either. If you don't go, I won't either.

8 Complete the sentences using *also*, *as well*, *either* or *too*.

- 1) Vera speaks English and she ... speaks Chinese.
- 2) Do exercise 5 and do exercise 6
- 3) Does Mr Gordon ... live in Oxford?
- 4) I went home early, and John did
- 5) I never read such fairy tales to little children
- 6) We can ... buy tickets for this show.
- 7) "Harry Potter" is a children's book. "Peter Pan" is ... a book for children.
- 8) We haven't seen "Titanic"
- 9) Translate the text and write exercise one

9 **A.** Listen to the sentences, (77), and guess what the new words mean.

- 1) **Prehistoric** [ˌpriːhɪ'stɔːk] people did not have a developed language.
- 2) The **drama** [ˈdrɑːmə] of A.P. Chekhov is very well known in the world.
- 3) We **organized** [ˈɔːgənəɪzd] a party to celebrate the end of the school year.
- 4) A **chorus** [ˈkɔːrəs] is a group of people who sing together.
- 5) D'Artagnan is the main **character** [ˈkærəktə] of "The Three Musketeers" by Alexandre Dumas.
- 6) "Othello" is a **tragedy** [ˈtrædʒədi] and "Twelfth Night" is a **comedy** [ˈkɒmədi] by William Shakespeare.
- 7) Spartacus is probably the most famous Roman **gladiator** [ˈglædiətə].
- 8) We sat near the **arena** [əˈriːnə] and could see the circus animals very well.
- 9) Easter and Christmas are **religious** [rɪˈlɪdʒəs] festivals.
- 10) The **Renaissance** [rɪˈneɪs(ə)ns] was the period in Europe between the 14th and 17th centuries, when the art, literature and ideas of ancient Greece were discovered again and widely studied.
- 11) A **moral** [ˈmɔːrəl] person always does the right things.
- 12) I forgot the words of the song and had to **improvise** [ˈɪmprəvaɪz]. Everyone laughed.
- 13) The speaker stood on a high **platform** [ˈplætfɔːm] and all the people around could see and hear him well.
- 14) At our geography lessons we use a lot of maps and a big **globe** [gləʊb].
- 15) A. N. Ostrovsky was one of the best Russian **dramatists** [ˈdræmətɪsts], he wrote a lot of interesting plays.
- 16) Have you ever been to a **concert** [ˈkɒnsət] of classical music?

B. Read the new words again, learn to pronounce them right.

- 1) The history of entertainment is very old.
- 2) Prehistoric people had special places for singing, dancing and story-telling.
- 3) Greek drama was the first public entertainment in Europe.
- 4) We know two kinds of Greek drama.
- 5) Greek tragedies always ended in the most important character dying.
- 6) There were new forms of entertainment introduced by ancient Romans.
- 7) In the Middle Ages the church didn't let the theatre develop freely.
- 8) The first performances took place in the streets.
- 9) The Renaissance was the time when the theatre developed fast and became very important.
- 10) Comedies and tragedies by William Shakespeare were written in the Golden Age of Theatre.
- 11) Cinema is the most popular of modern entertainments.
- 12) Television has become the number one entertainment for modern people.

The History of Entertainment

Nearly everyone enjoys entertainment. The beginnings of popular entertainment go back to prehistoric times, when dance, music and story-telling were very important.

The traditions of entertainment began in ancient Greece about 2,500 years ago with the development of Greek drama. In those days festivals were organized to celebrate Dionysus [*daiə'naiəs*], the Greek god of wine and new life, with song and dance. Later poets began to write stories for a large group of performers (a chorus and an actor to recite). Then another actor was introduced which made a dialogue between characters possible. There were two forms of classical [*'klæsɪkl*] Greek drama — tragedy and comedy.

The Romans continued the traditions of Greece and developed other kinds of entertainment as well. The beginnings of the circus are connected with gladiators fighting in public arenas.



In the Middle Ages¹ the church considered entertainment and drama wrong, but by and by drama reappeared with religious and moral plays.

In the time of Renaissance the theatre became less religious and there was a new interest in Greek and Roman drama. Common people² preferred comedies performed by a travelling group of actors. At first, the actors had no text, only an idea of what was going to happen and had to improvise. They usually performed on high platforms in public places. The actors offered entertainment which included plays, songs and dances.

The Golden Age of Theatre began when the first special theatres were built. The first of such theatres was opened in London in 1652. Soon there appeared a few others including the famous Globe Theatre. Among the writers who worked for these theatres was William Shakespeare, one of the greatest dramatists in any language. Shakespeare gave his audience great literature but at the same time he gave them popular entertainment.

Nowadays people entertain themselves by listening to music, watching TV programmes, films and videos, going to concerts and circus shows but the theatre is still among our favourite entertainments.

B. Listen, (78), and read the text again after it.

¹ the Middle Ages — Средние века

² common people — простые люди



C. Say what makes the theatre a favourite entertainment for many people nowadays.

11 Read the text "The History of Entertainment" again and say the same in one word.

Example: A theatre or a film show, a concert, etc. — entertainment.

- 1) Belonging to the time before history was written down.
- 2) Belonging to the time of very long ago.
- 3) Plays for acting.
- 4) A group of people singing together.
- 5) Talk between two people, often in films or plays.
- 6) A person in a play, film or story.
- 7) A drama about sad events with a sad end.
- 8) A show with performances by acrobats ['ækrəbæts], clowns [klaʊnz] and animals, often travelling from place to place.
- 9) The period between the 11th and 15th centuries in Europe.
- 10) A writer working for the theatre.
- 11) People watching or listening to a performance.
- 12) Musical entertainment.

12 Answer the questions.

- 1) Were music, dancing and story-telling in prehistoric times forms of entertainment or were they connected with magic¹?
- 2) In which country did the history of drama begin? When did it happen? What event was it connected with?
- 3) Who(m) did they call an "actor" in ancient Greece?
- 4) What are the two forms of classical Greek drama?
- 5) What do you know about Euripides [ju:'rɪpɪdɪ:z] and Sophocles ['sɒfəkli:z]?
- 6) What popular modern entertainment began in ancient Rome?
- 7) Why weren't the Middle Ages the best time for the development of drama?
- 8) What did Renaissance people rediscover?
- 9) What were theatrical performances like before real theatres appeared?
- 10) How do you understand the meaning of Golden Age? What time is considered to be the Golden Age of Theatre?

¹ magic ['mædʒɪk] — магия

- 11) How much do you know about William Shakespeare?
12) What are the most popular forms of entertainment today?
Which of them do you prefer?

Do It on Your Own

232

Unit 6

13 A. Write who these pictures were painted by.

1) "Morning in the Pine Forest"



- a) Claude Monet
- b) Victor Vasnetsov
- c) Leonardo Da Vinci
- d) Vincent Van Gogh
- e) Karl Bryullov
- f) Ivan Shishkin

2) "The Horsewoman"



3) "The Mona Lisa"



4) "Alenushka"



5) "Sunflowers"



6) "Waterlily Pond"



B. Write who these books were written by.

- 1) "Life on the Mississippi"
- 2) "Harry Potter and the Philosopher's Stone"
- 3) "Peter Pan"
- 4) "Oliver Twist"
- 5) "Robinson Crusoe"
- 6) "War and Peace"

- a) Leo Tolstoy
- b) Joanne Rowling
- c) Mark Twain
- d) Daniel Defoe
- e) Charles Dickens
- f) James M. Barry

233

Step Three

Step Three

Do It Together

1 Listen to the dialogues, 🎧 (79), and say where they are taking place.

2 Complete the text with theatre words. Check, 🎧 (80).

The theatre at Delphi in Greece was built in the 300s BC. It was so well built that even people sitting right at the back could hear every word the actors spoke.



Theatre

A th... is a place where p...s are performed by a...s and watched by an au... .

The earliest theatres we know about were in Greece where d... in the form of t...s and c...s was enjoyed by theatre lovers. Greek theatres looked like big stadiums open to the sky, but they were



so well built that everyone could see and hear the p...ers well. Roman th...s looked like Greek th...s. The Romans built a th... in nearly every large town in the country. Some of the Greek and Roman d...s are remembered today and their p...s are performed in modern th...s.

3 Read out the sentences in *the passive voice* from exercise 2.

4 Read the sentences and say how *future passive* is formed. Then translate the sentences into Russian.



Ann **will be invited** to the party.
The room **will be cleaned** tomorrow.
The fruit **will be bought** on Sunday.



Tom **won't be helped**.
The letter **won't be sent** tomorrow.
The cake **won't be made** by granny.



Will flowers be grown here?
Will the tickets be brought in the morning?
Will the story be translated soon?



When will the car be washed?
Why will the letter be written in French?
Where will the flowers be planted?

5 Say the same in a different way. Use *the passive voice*.

- 1) We'll remember the play.
- 2) People heard a loud noise in the garden.
- 3) Ann won't clean the carpet tomorrow.
- 4) She will do it next Saturday.
- 5) What will you grow in the kitchen garden in summer?
- 6) I won't forget your help.
- 7) They speak only English in their club.
- 8) They did not include all endangered birds into the list.
- 9) They will make a discovery soon.
- 10) Will somebody draw the emblem of our club?



В английском языке в страдательном залоге употребляются также глаголы, которые требуют после себя предлога: **to talk about, to send for, to listen to, to look at, to think of, to look after, to laugh at, to speak to/about, to ask for, to wait for.** В страдательном залоге эти предлоги всегда сохраняются.

He is much spoken about. — О нём много говорят.

The doctor was sent for. — За доктором послали.

She is often waited for. — Её часто ждут.


Such jokes are not laughed at. — Над такими шутками не смеются.

The children will be looked after. — За детьми присмотрят.

John will be spoken to. — С Джоном поговорят.

6 How can you say the same using *the passive voice*?

1) People speak a lot about this film. 2) They spoke to Mr Hardson. 3) My cousins will look after my pet. 4) People will laugh at you. 5) They sent for my parents. 6) The boy is so unusual, everybody looks at him. 7) People often ask for such dictionaries. 8) Nobody spoke to me in such a way. 9) People will never talk about such things. 10) I'm sure everybody will listen to Harry.

7 Look at the pictures and read the theatre words. Check,  (81).



A.

- 1) stalls [stɔ:lz]
- 2) stage [steɪdʒ]
- 3) balcony ['bælkəni]
- 4) gallery ['gæləri]
- 5) rows [rəʊz] of seats [si:ts]
- 6) circle ['sɜ:kl]
- 7) curtain ['kɜ:tn]
- 8) orchestra pit ['ɔ:kɪstrə ,pɪt]
- 9) box

B.



10) cloakroom ['kləʊkrʊm]



11) foyer ['fɔɪeɪ]



12) box office ['bɒks ,ɒfɪs]



13) buffet ['bʊfeɪ]



14) ballet ['bæleɪ]



15) opera ['ɒp(ə)rə]



16) programme ['prəʊgræm]



17) opera glasses ['ɒp(ə)rə ˌglɑːsɪz]



18) costume ['kɒstjʊm]



Focus

С обозначением мест в театре употребляется предлог *in*:
in the stalls, in the box, in the balcony, in Row B, но: on the stage.

8 A. Listen to the dialogue "At the Box Office", (82), and act it out.



At the Box Office

A: Hello. How can I help you?

B: I'd like two seats for tomorrow.

A: Morning or evening performance?

B: Evening, please.

A: Where do you want your seats?

B: In the stalls, back or middle rows.

A: I am sorry, but the stalls are sold out¹. We have two good seats in a box at 35 pounds.

B: That's more than I wanted to pay.

A: Then I can offer you two seats in the circle, front row, at 12 pounds.

B: I think I'll take those. Thanks very much.

A: You're welcome.

B. Can you buy a theatre ticket? Work in pairs and practise.

¹ are sold [səʊld] out — проданы



A.

invite [ɪn'vaɪt] — приглашать

invitation [ˌɪnvɪ'teɪʃn] — приглашение

arrive [ə'raɪv] — прибывать

ticket ['tɪkɪt] — билет

expensive [ɪk'spensɪv] — дорогой (*о цене, стоимости*)

fantastic [fæn'tæstɪk] — фантастический, потрясающий

impress [ɪm'pres] — производить впечатление

impression [ɪm'preʃn] — впечатление

rise [raɪz] — подниматься

scenery ['si:nəri] — декорации

applause [ə'plɔ:z] — аплодисменты

applaud [ə'plɔ:d] — аплодировать

to go down/up — гаснуть/загораться (*об огнях, свете*)

at last — наконец

B.

invite: to invite sb to/for sth, to invite to the theatre, to be invited to the performance. Why don't you invite them for supper?

invitation: Nobody in the office received an invitation to the party.

arrive: to arrive in/at some place, to arrive home, to arrive at the house, to arrive in the country. They arrived in Moscow in late October.

arrival: an early arrival, on arrival, the arrival of the flight. Johnson was arrested on his arrival to New York.

ticket: a cinema ticket, a theatre ticket, a lottery ticket, a match ticket; to get tickets for the game (performance, show, concert, trip); to get a train (bus, plane) ticket.

expensive: an expensive car, expensive tastes. My cousin always wears expensive clothes. The seats in the stalls were very expensive.

fantastic: a fantastic idea. It's a fantastic performance! You've done a fantastic job.

impress: to impress sb. His answer impressed me. I was impressed by what he said.

impression: the first impression, to make an impression on sb. I know you want to make a good impression on everyone you meet.



at, in, on, to, for, of, by, from

- 1) A plane ticket ... London is more expensive than a train ticket. 2) When we arrived ... the hotel, we were asked to wait. 3) When Florence arrived ... the theatre, the performance had already begun. 4) Can I have a ticket ... Rome? 5) How much were the tickets ... the performance? 6) The Thompsons arrived ... Australia ... the beginning of June. 7) Have you received an invitation ... the party? 8) Our seats were not ... the stalls, they were ... the balcony. 9) The ballet made a strong impression ... the girl. 10) I was impressed ... her words. 11) Johnny rose ... his seat and went ... the window. 12) There was a storm ... applause after the performance. 13) Have you invited Paul ... dinner? 14) Do they use a lot ... scenery in "Swan Lake"?

11 A. Read the paragraphs of the text and put them in the right order.

Lisa's First Visit to the Bolshoi Theatre

a) During the interval we walked around in the foyer. I told Alec how much I liked the ballet. It was really wonderful. I said I would love to see some other ballet some day. So we went to the box office and bought two tickets for "The Nutcracker"¹. Then we had ice cream and coffee in the buffet.

b) When we arrived at the theatre, we left our coats at the cloakroom. Our seats were in the stalls. I had a look at the tickets. They were not very expensive, but we could see the stage very well. Alec bought me a programme and gave me his opera glasses. The curtains were fantastic. As we had some time before the beginning I walked to the stage and the orchestra pit and looked at the hall. Its red and golden interior [in'tɪəriə] impressed me very much.



¹ "The Nutcracker" [nʌtˈkrækə] — «Щелкунчик» (балет на музыку П. И. Чайковского)



c) Last autumn my cousin invited me to the Bolshoi Theatre. I had never been there before and was really excited when Alec told me we were going to see “Swan Lake”, the famous ballet by P. I. Tchaikovsky.

d) When at last the ballet was over and the music came to an end, there was a storm of applause. I applauded loudly too. I really enjoyed myself.

e) Soon the lights went down, then the curtain rose and the dancers appeared on the stage. I liked every minute of the first act [ækt] — the scenery, the costumes, the music and the way they danced.

B. Listen,  (84), and read the text again after it.



12 Use some of these word combinations and tell your friends about your or somebody else’s visit to the theatre. (You can use Lisa’s story as a model.)

- to buy tickets at the box office
- to be invited to the theatre (to invite sb to the theatre)
- to feel excited
- to listen to an opera (to see a ballet, a drama, a comedy, a tragedy)
- to arrive at the theatre
- to leave the clothes at the cloakroom
- to have seats in the stalls (gallery, circle, balcony, in a box)
- (not) expensive tickets
- to buy a programme
- to have one’s opera glasses
- to go down/up (about the lights)
- to walk to the stage (orchestra pit)
- during the interval
- to go to the buffet

- to be over (about the performance)
- to rise/fall (about the curtain)
- to applaud loudly
- to enjoy oneself

Do It on Your Own

- 13** Open the brackets to complete the text. Use *the passive voice* where necessary.

Theatre in the Time of William Shakespeare

The first real theatre (build) by a carpenter¹ and part-time actor called James Burbage. It (call) the Theatre. Burbage's son Richard (become) the country's first well-known actor. In those days the theatre (be) very different from the theatre today. There (be) no actresses², young women's parts (perform) by the company's clowns. All the actors (have) to be musicians and dancers. Poetic drama (introduce) by Christopher Marlowe ['ma:ləʊ], a great dramatist who (kill) in a duel ['dju:əl] at the age of 29. The audiences also (enjoy) the plays which (write) by Thomas Kyd, Ben Jonson and John Lyly.

- 14** Write the same in English.

Вечернее представление, место в партере, красивые декорации, театральный бинокль, потрясающие (фантастические) костюмы, шквал аплодисментов, билет на пьесу, прибыть на вокзал, приглашение на обед, произвести хорошее впечатление на зрителей, приехать домой, билет на оперу, во время антракта.

Step Four

Do It Together

- 1** Listen to the text "The Movies Come to Hollywood", (85), and say which of the facts were not mentioned in it.

- 1) At first the Willcoxes bought two lemon farms near Los Angeles.
- 2) The Willcoxes called the land they had bought Hollywood.

¹ a carpenter ['kɑ:pɪntə] — плотник

² an actress ['æktɪs] — актриса



3) Until 1910, audiences did not know the names of their favourite actors and actresses.

4) Good weather attracted film-makers to California.

5) Actors and actresses didn't talk in the first films.

Hollywood studios



Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer



20th Century Fox

243

Step Four



Universal Pictures



Warner Bros.



Columbia Pictures
Industries, Inc.



Paramount Pictures

- 2 Work in small groups and find out who takes the greatest interest in the theatre. Ask and answer.

Find out:

- if your friends have ever been to the theatre
- what theatre(s) they go to or have been to
- if they often (not very often, seldom, hardly ever, never) go to the theatre
- if they know any names of famous Russian theatres
- if they know any names of famous Russian actors and actresses
- if they can give 3—5 names of well-known Russian dramatists
- if they can give 3—5 names of famous dramatists from other countries
- what names of popular operas and ballets they know
- what composers write and wrote music for opera and ballet
- what famous opera houses around the world they know and where they are situated

- 3 A. Here are some facts about films and film-makers. Read the text and say which sentences can be used in *the passive voice*.

Some Facts from the History of Hollywood

People remember "The Birth of a Nation"¹ as one of the most famous Hollywood silent² films. They first showed it in 1915 and it took nearly three hours. The film was about American history. A lot of people who had never been inside a cinema before saw this film.

The Golden Age of Cinema began with the talkies³ — when the actors in the film were able to talk. In 1927 Al Jolson, the Russian-born Hollywood actor and singer, said a few words and sang six songs in the film "The Jazz Singer". The public loved him.

In 1932 they introduced a new camera ['kæm(a)rə] which could make colour films for the cinemas. Soon big audiences enjoyed colour films. One of the most popular films of all times was probably the colour film "Gone with the Wind". The audiences first saw it in 1939. The film won eight Oscars. They still show this legendary film in cinemas and on television all over the world.

Cinema uses special effects when it is too difficult or dangerous to do something in the usual way. A good example is the popular

¹ "The Birth of a Nation" — «Рождение нации» (название фильма)

² silent ['saɪlənt] — немой

³ a talkie ['tɔ:ki] — (разг.) звуковой фильм



film "Jurassic [dʒʊə'reɪsɪk] Park" (1993). The big dinosaurs in the film were not real, of course! They made lots of models of each of them. Today, they use computers more and more in special effects.

In some cinemas which people call IMAX DOME [ˈɪmæks ˌdəʊm] theatres they use a big, 30 metre screen¹, and put the audience right in the centre of everything that is happening in the film.

B. Would you like to visit some film studio? What studio and why?



Focus

Обратите внимание на различие предлогов в следующих сочетаниях:

быть сделанным из чего-то

to be made of

Используется, когда материал, из которого сделан предмет, не подвергался качественной переработке, т. е. не изменил своей сущности: the pen is made of plastic.

The table is made of plastic.

The key is made of metal.

The bench is made of wood.

The book is made of paper.

to be made from

Используется, когда материал подвергся переработке и в результате стал чем-то иным, например яблоки при варке превратились в варенье: the jam is made from apples. Обычно предлог *from* используется тогда, когда речь идёт о приготовлении пищи.

Butter is made from milk.

Borsch is made from different vegetables.

This fruit salad is made from apples, plums and apricots.

4 A. Work with these material nouns. Listen, (86), and repeat.

1) learn them

gold [gəʊld] — золото

silver ['sɪlvə] — серебро

steel [sti:l] — сталь

wood [wʊd] — дерево

brick [brɪk] — кирпич

cardboard ['kɑ:dbɔ:d] — картон

wool [wʊl] — шерсть

cotton ['kɒtn] — хлопок

china ['tʃaɪnə] — фарфор

¹ a screen [skri:n] — экран



2) remember them
stone
rubber
glass

paper
metal
plastic

B. What are these things usually made of?

Example: Books are usually made of paper and cardboard.

246

Unit 6



1.



2.



3.



4.



5.



6.



7.



8.



9.



10.



11.



13.



14.



15.



12.



16.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1) matryoshka dolls | 9) clocks and watches |
| 2) sweaters and warm socks | 10) boxes and cartons |
| 3) summer dresses and T-shirts | 11) CDs and tapes |
| 4) windows | 12) money |
| 5) cups and plates | 13) city monuments |
| 6) planes and cars | 14) postcards |
| 7) houses | 15) rings and earrings |
| 8) bridges | 16) balls and balloons |

C. Say what your favourite food and drink are made from.



Focus

Модальные глаголы **should**, **can**, **must** и эквивалент **must — have to** — часто употребляются с пассивным инфинитивом, при этом сказуемое строится по следующей схеме:

модальный глагол + be + V₂

The letter **must be written**. — Письмо должно быть написано. (Письмо нужно написать.)

The answer **should be given**. — Ответ следует дать.

The record **can be listened to**. — Пластинку можно послушать.

The books **have to be returned to the library**. — Книги необходимо вернуть в библиотеку.

The text **must be translated**. — Текст должен быть переведён.

5 Complete the sentences with the given verbs, active or passive.

- Kevin should (tell) about it as soon as possible¹.
- This letter must (answer) at once.
- Fred has to (tell) about the meeting.
- This text can (translate) into Chinese.
- Tom should (invite) to the party.
- Children should (teach) to speak politely.
- It's too hot. Milk must (keep) in the fridge.
- The film can (show) after lunch.
- This fact must (explain) to the students.
- The text must (read) by the children.

¹ as soon as possible — как можно быстрее



A.

I.

action [ˈæktʃən] **film** — остро- сюжетный фильм, боевик
thriller [ˈθrɪlə] — остросю- жетный фильм, триллер
science fiction [ˈsaɪəns ˌfɪkʃən] **film** — научно-фантастиче- ский фильм

II.

seem — казаться
price — цена
magic(al) [ˈmædʒɪk(ɪ)] — ма- гический, волшебный
screen — экран
agree — соглашаться

adventure [ədˈventʃə] **film** — приключенческий фильм
crime [kraɪm] **film** — детектив
horror [ˈhɒrə] **film** — фильм ужасов
psychological [ˌsaɪkəˈlɒdʒɪkəl] **film** — психологическая дра- ма

besides [bɪˈsaɪdz] — кроме, кроме того
attention [əˈtenʃn] — внима- ние
attentive [əˈtentɪv] — внима- тельный

B.

seem: to seem nice, to seem good, to seem all right. That apple is bad, but this one seems all right. It seems cold today. He is not what he seems. It seems to me...

price: the price of sth, low/high prices, at a low price, at half price, at what price. What was the price of your new bicycle? She has become very successful but at what price? We bought the video cassette at half price. Victor bought the pens at a small price, at the price of 5 roubles each.

magic(al): a magic trick, a magic carpet, a magic show; a magi- cal world (evening, melody). It was a truly magical night.

screen: a wide screen, a computer screen, to appear on the screen, to come to the screen. A new action film will come to the screen later this month.

agree: to agree with sb, to agree to do sth, to agree to a plan (an idea). We agreed to leave at once. Do you think John will agree with us? "Gone with the Wind" is one of the best films of the last century. — I couldn't agree more. (I quite agree with you.)

disagree: to disagree with sb. I strongly disagree with the last speaker.

besides: I don't like this coat and, besides, it costs too much. There are many rivers in England besides the Thames.

attention: to pay attention to sth/sb. You should pay attention to what your teacher says.

attentive: to be attentive to sb/sth; an attentive listener, an attentive teacher. Our family doctor is friendly and attentive. Be attentive to your granny.

7 At TV shows people are often asked different questions. How will you answer the questions about cinema and film making?

1) What action films have you seen lately? 2) Are you fond of horror films? Why? Why not? 3) Sherlock Holmes [ˌʃɜːlɒk 'həʊmz] is one of the world-famous characters of crime films. Do you know any others? 4) Are psychological dramas popular nowadays? Why do you think they are (aren't)? 5) Who do you think prefers to watch science fiction films more: men or women, young people or old people? 6) Can you call the film about Robinson Crusoe an adventure film? Why? Why not? 7) What other adventure films have you seen or heard of? 8) Can you give the titles ['taɪtlz] of some thrillers? 9) Does it seem to you that cinema tickets are expensive nowadays? What is the usual price for evening/morning shows? 10) Do you think the size of a screen is important if you watch a film at the cinema? Which is better — a usual screen or a wide screen? 11) Some people say that the world of the cinema is a magical world. Do you agree (disagree) with them? Why? 12) What Hollywood studios besides Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer do you know? 13) What influences your choice of films? Do you pay attention to the ads¹? 14) Do you think it is possible or impossible to watch all the new films of your favourite genre ['ʒɒnrə] that come to the screen nowadays?

8 A. Read the text and match the titles below with its four paragraphs. There is one extra title.

- a) Why We Go to the Cinema
- b) How Cinema Began
- c) Where We Watch Films
- d) Cinema Is the Great World of Fantasy
- e) Tastes Differ²

¹ the ads (advertisements [əd'vɜːtɪsmənts]) — реклама

² Tastes differ. — О вкусах не спорят.



Let's Go to the Cinema!

1) Today it is possible to buy a video and watch a film at home, but millions of people all over the world still prefer to go to their town or city cinema for a "night out". And before television arrived in people's homes, a visit to the cinema was something really special and truly wonderful.

2) The Golden Age of film making and going to the cinema was between 1930 and 1950. Film stars seemed like kings and queens. Cinemas were "picture¹ palaces" where, for the price of a ticket,

¹ picture – film – movie

you could find yourself in a magical world. In that world anything and everything was possible.

3) Nowadays cinema audiences are much smaller and usually younger than the audiences of the Golden Age. Many of the “picture palaces” are now multiscreen cinemas with four or five small cinemas inside one building. Today’s films appear on video, and then on TV after cinema audiences have seen them. But some films don’t look so good on TV, they need a large screen to be really enjoyed. Television can’t do it. You may agree or disagree with it, but for many people the cinema is still the only place to watch a film. Besides, the cinema is the only place where you can watch a brand-new¹ film before your friends do it and decide if you like it.

4) Of course, everyone has their own favourite kinds of films — action films or thrillers, comedies, psychological dramas, science fiction, adventure and crime films, horror films or musicals. But cinema is always in the focus of our attention; it thrills, entertains and educates us.

B. Listen,  (88), and read the text again after it.

C. Why do many people prefer watching videos to going to the cinema? Will people go to the cinema in the future?

9 Read the text “Let’s Go to the Cinema” again and find in it the words and word combinations which mean:

- 1) an evening when you go out to a cinema, theatre or party
- 2) a period of time when the best work was done
- 3) a well-known actor or an actress in cinema pictures
- 4) money you pay for a ticket
- 5) a place which is strange, wonderful and enjoyable
- 6) filmgoers
- 7) having a few screens
- 8) new and not used
- 9) a film that tells a very exciting story, usually of crime or adventure
- 10) a funny film which ends happily
- 11) a film about imaginary² future events and characters, often about travelling to other planets

¹ brand-new = new and completely unused

² imaginary [i'mædʒɪnəri] — воображаемый



12) a film where terrible and dangerous things happen, such as dead people coming to life

13) a film with spoken words, songs and often dances

10 Can you develop these ideas? Work in pairs or on your own.

Cinema some time ago

- before television arrived
- the Golden Age of Cinema
- a special event
- big audiences
- film stars were like kings and queens
- smaller cinemas
- lower ticket prices

Cinema today

- prefer to watch video films or TV
- smaller and younger audiences
- higher ticket prices
- modern multiscreen cinemas
- brand-new films
- better picture and sound
- a lot of special effects [ɪ'fektz]

Cinemas and television

- look better/worse on a large screen
- watch brand-new films
- watch a film before you can watch it on video
- watch a film in the comfort of your home
- watch a film with your friends

Films of different kinds

- tastes differ
- films for older and younger audiences
- favourite kinds of films
- films that entertain us
- serious films
- some people prefer..., other people prefer...

Do It on Your Own

11 Use *of* or *from* to complete the sentences.

1) Is your new skirt made ... wool or cotton? 2) As everybody knows, Pinocchio was made ... wood. 3) This tasty cocktail is made ... milk, ice cream and fruit juice. 4) We have made this juice ... fresh oranges. 5) A lot of old cottages in Scotland are made ... stone. 6) In Asia they often use tables and chairs made ... bamboo. 7) My grandmother's jam made ... plums is really nice, we often have it for tea. 8) Watches made ... gold are very expensive. 9) What is this soup made ...? 10) The boat was not heavy because it was made ... rubber.

12 Complete the sentences with the words in brackets, *active* or *passive*.

1) Your friend (should/give) some unusual present for his 20th birthday.
2) Don't you know that milk (should/keep) in a fridge?
3) I tried but I (couldn't/open) the window.
4) Someone (have to/take) the child home. He (can't/leave) here alone.
5) This new book (must/read). It's wonderful!
6) They (shouldn't/spend) so much time in front of the television.

253

Step Five

Step Five

Do It Together

1 Listen to the text about a famous British music band¹, (89). Say whose favourite pastimes they are.

- singing
- talking
- eating Italian food
- having parties and meeting new people



¹ a music band — музыкальная группа

2 Paraphrase these word combinations using *of* or *from*.

Example: A glass jug. The jug is made of glass.
Apple jam. The jam is made from apples.

- 1) paper money, 2) china vase, 3) fur coat, 4) vegetable salad,
- 5) metal ring, 6) tomato soup, 7) stone bench, 8) silver chain,
- 9) orange marmalade



Focus

После некоторых глаголов английского языка: **look** (выглядеть), **seem**, **appear**, **taste**, **smell**¹ (пахнуть), **sound**, **feel**, в отличие от русского языка, не могут следовать наречия, после них используются прилагательные. Ср.:

Russian

Музыка звучит громко.
Джон выглядит молодо.
Алиса чувствует себя плохо.

English

The music sounds loud [loud].
John looks young.
Alice feels bad, she doesn't feel well/good.

(В последнем примере *well* является старой формой прилагательного.)
Ср.: Alice does her homework well. В этом примере *well* — наречие, означающее «хорошо».)

Обратите внимание на различия в значениях глагола **to look**.

Jane looks sad. (После *look* следует прилагательное.)
Джейн выглядит грустной.
Jane looked at me sadly. (После *look* следует наречие.)
Джейн посмотрела на меня грустно.

3 **A.** Complete the sentences with one of the verbs — *seem*, *look*, *sound*, *taste*, *smell* or *feel* in the right form.

- 1) How are you ... today? — I'm fine, thank you. In fact I've never ... better.
- 2) The water ... so cold. I don't think I'll swim today.
- 3) The flowers ... nice. Are they from your garden?
- 4) The language they are speaking ... strange. I'm sure it's not a European language.
- 5) Evening came. It was very quiet. The air ... of grasses and flowers.

¹ Глагол *smell* имеет две формы для прошедшего времени и второго причастия — *smelled* или *smelt*.

Cinemas

the Coliseum [ˌkɒlɪ'si:əm]
 the Saturn ['sætən]
 the Odeon ['əʊdʒən]
 the Zenith ['zɛnɪθ]
 the Rossia
 the Forum

Theatres

the Bolshoi Theatre
 the Maly Theatre
 the Royal Opera House at Covent Garden
 the Royal Shakespeare Theatre
 the National Theatre
 the Playhouse

5 Complete the sentences. Use articles (a, the) where necessary.**A.**

The centre of theatre life in Britain is London, but in most ⁽¹⁾ cities and ⁽²⁾ towns of ⁽³⁾ country there are ⁽⁴⁾ theatres too. There are about ⁽⁵⁾ hundred theatres in London, half of them are situated in ⁽⁶⁾ West End. Probably ⁽⁷⁾ most famous theatre is ⁽⁸⁾ Royal Opera House at Covent Garden which is in ⁽⁹⁾ central London. Seasons of opera are performed on its stage. ⁽¹⁰⁾ Royal Ballet, one of the world's most famous ballet companies, also gives its performances there. There are many theatres and ⁽¹¹⁾ theatre companies for young people. ⁽¹²⁾ National Youth Theatre and ⁽¹³⁾ Young Vic Company in London are among them.

B.

This guidebook gives you information about Washington, D.C. Here you can find ⁽¹⁾ texts about all the museums of ⁽²⁾ city. For example, on ⁽³⁾ page 56 you can read about ⁽⁴⁾ National Museum of American History and ⁽⁵⁾ some other museums as well. Children are often taken to ⁽⁶⁾ Natural History Museum where they spend hours learning about how life developed on ⁽⁷⁾ planet. Another must for ⁽⁸⁾ visitor to Washington, D.C. is ⁽⁹⁾ National Air and Space Museum, possibly ⁽¹⁰⁾ most popular of Washington's museums and ⁽¹¹⁾ most visited museum of ⁽¹²⁾ world.

6 Learn how to pronounce and use the new words and word combinations. Listen, (90), and repeat.**A.**

compose [kəm'pəʊz] — сочинять, создавать
receive [rɪ'si:v] — получать, принимать

emotion [ɪ'məʊʃn] — чувство, эмоция
full [fʊl] — полный (чего-либо)
devote [dɪ'vəʊt] — посвящать



inspire [ɪn'spaɪə] — вдохновлять

graduate ['grædʒueɪt] — окончить высшее учебное заведение

conduct [kən'dʌkt] — дирижировать

conductor [kən'dʌktə] — дирижёр

dead [ded] — мёртвый; увядший

be based [beɪst] **on** — быть основанным на (*чём-либо*)

B.

compose: to compose music, to compose an opera, to compose a ballet. Bizet ['bi:zeɪ] composed an opera called "Carmen".

composer: Mozart ['mɔ:tsə:t] was a famous composer.

receive: 1) to receive a letter, to receive calls from school. We haven't received your letter yet. Did you receive many presents on your birthday? 2) to receive visitors, guests¹. He received his visitors with a smile.

emotion: strong emotions, an uncomfortable emotion, to control one's emotions. Love and hate are emotions. Happiness is an emotion too.

full: a full glass of milk, a house full of guests for the party, to be full of sth. The hall was full of people. Her life is full of excitement. The packet is half-full. A full-time student.

devote: to devote sth to sb/sth. Eric devotes all his free time to playing football. John has devoted most of his time to his painting. He devoted himself to writing music. A devoted friend.

be devoted to sb/sth: We are devoted to our country.

inspire: to inspire a poet, to inspire a painter, to inspire the audience. What inspired you to write poems?

graduate: to graduate from a university, to graduate from college. My uncle graduated from Oxford in 2002.

conduct: to conduct a work of music, to conduct an orchestra. Tchaikovsky conducted the first performance of his Sixth Symphony.

conductor: a famous conductor. Our music teacher is also the conductor of our school orchestra.

dead: dead flowers, dead animals, dead bodies. The plant was dead because it hadn't got enough water and sun.

be based on: The story is based on real life. The film is based on a true story.

¹ a guest [gest] — гость

7 A. Match the words in the two columns.

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1) to receive | a) an orchestra |
| 2) to compose | b) a composer |
| 3) to be full of | c) letters |
| 4) to graduate from | d) a symphony |
| 5) to devote to | e) flowers |
| 6) to inspire | f) a university/conservatoire |
| 7) to conduct | g) one's parents |

B. Write your own sentences with the new words.



Focus

В английском языке существуют два слова, которые соответствуют русскому слову «концерт»:

a **concert** ['kɒnsət] — публичное исполнение музыкальных произведений и других номеров по определённой программе;

a **concerto** [kən'tʃɜ:təʊ] — крупное музыкальное произведение для сольного инструмента в сопровождении оркестра.

We went to a **concert** of Vivaldi's music.

Tchaikovsky's First Piano **Concerto** is one of the best-loved melodies of all times.

8 A. Read the text and say which of these facts were not mentioned in it.

- 1) What people thought of Tchaikovsky's music in his time and what they think of it today.
- 2) How Tchaikovsky started composing music.
- 3) Tchaikovsky's career in music.
- 4) Tchaikovsky's student years.
- 5) The ballets he composed.
- 6) The operas he composed.
- 7) What countries the composer visited in Europe.
- 8) The composer's last music piece.





P. I. Tchaikovsky and His Music

Peter Ilyich Tchaikovsky (1840—1893) is one of the most important figures in the history of music. He wrote some of the best-loved melodies of all times. His ballet music is some of the happiest and most tuneful¹ music ever written.

By the end of his life, in the late 19th century Tchaikovsky was known as the greatest living composer. However, at the beginning of his career, his compositions were not always well received. Tchaikovsky's music, which is so popular today, was at the time considered to be very modern and different. Some people thought it was too sentimental and emotional. But audiences everywhere came to love Tchaikovsky's musical style which was full of feeling and could excite them.

Tchaikovsky was born in Votkinsk, Russia, in 1840. Young Peter showed an early interest in music. He was given piano lessons at the age of five and very soon he learned to play better than his teacher. His mother died when he was fourteen, he felt unhappy and began to compose music which helped him. At the age of twenty-three he became a full-time student at St Petersburg Conservatory [kən'sɜ:vətʃi]. He graduated from it and was offered a post at the Moscow Conservatory, where he taught for the next twelve years. Then he devoted himself to composing.

His music was often inspired by Russian folk² tunes and includes some of the world's best-loved melodies such as the "Romeo

¹ **tuneful** ['tju:nfl] — мелодичный

² **folk** [fɔ:k] — фольклорный, народный

[ˈrəʊmiəʊ] and *Juliet Fantasy Overture* [ˈjuːlɪət ɒvətʃʊə]” and his *First Piano Concerto* [kənˈfɜːtəʊ]. His ballets — “*Swan Lake*”, “*Sleeping Beauty*” and “*The Nutcracker*” — are still among the most popular ballets.

Between 1888 and 1893 Tchaikovsky visited Europe and the USA conducting his own works. In 1893 he conducted the first performance of his *Sixth Symphony* [sɪksθ sɪmfəni]. He called it the “*Pathétique*” (full of feeling), saying, “It is based on so much emotion and feeling that when I composed this work, I found myself crying.” Tchaikovsky considered this to be his greatest composition; it was also his last. Less than two weeks later he was dead.

B. Listen,  (91), and read the text again after it.

- 9 A. Read the text about Tchaikovsky again and find in it sentences that prove¹ the following.**

1) Tchaikovsky’s music is not forgotten. 2) The beginning of Tchaikovsky’s career in music was not successful. 3) Tchaikovsky’s music is full of emotion. 4) Peter Tchaikovsky was a child prodigy. 5) Young Tchaikovsky left his home to study music. 6) Many years of Tchaikovsky’s life are connected with Moscow. 7) Tchaikovsky composed three ballets. 8) Tchaikovsky spent some time abroad. 9) The *Sixth Symphony* was Tchaikovsky’s swan song².

B. Where can you hear Tchaikovsky’s music? Why do you think it is not forgotten?



Social English

- 10 A. Learn to express your opinion³ in English.**

I think...	} по-моему, мне кажется
I believe...	
In my opinion...	
In my view [vjuː]...	
As I see it...	
To my mind [maɪnd]...	
If you ask me...	

¹ **to prove** [pruːv] — доказывать

² **swan song** [ˈswɒn sɒŋ] = the last performance, speech or piece of work in the career of a well-known person

³ **opinion** [əˈpɪnjən] — мнение



Agreeing

That's just what I think.
 Yes, that's true.
 I fully agree.
 I couldn't agree more.
 I am of the same opinion.

Disagreeing

I see what you mean but...
 It may be right but...
 Well, I'm not so sure.
 I can't agree with you here.
 I shouldn't say so.
 Not at all!

B. Work in pairs. Express your opinions on the following. React to them.

Example: Chinese food

— If you ask me, Chinese food tastes too unusual. I can't say that I like it.
 — Yes, that's true. I had it once and didn't enjoy it at all.
 or: — I shouldn't say so. I had it once and rather enjoyed it.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1) the film you watched recently | 6) dangerous sports |
| 2) pop music | 7) folk dancing |
| 3) rock music | 8) a group or a singer popular at the moment |
| 4) the book you are reading | 9) travelling |
| 5) symphony music | 10) shopping |



11 Listen, (92), and sing along.

Pasadena¹

(Karen and Alice Maywood)

Come with me to Pasadena,
 Today at ten we will arrive.
 I have been in Pasadena
 For a great deal of my life.

Refrain: Come with me to Pasadena
 If you want to have some fun,
 Watch the dancing seniorinas
 In the heat² of the sun.

When I woke up today
 I heard someone say,
 "Girl, it's raining
 And they're expecting³ snow."

¹ **Pasadena** [pə'seɪ'di:nə] — a city in California, not far from Los Angeles. The city was founded in 1894. It's a famous place for holidaymaking.

² **heat** [hi:t] — жара

³ **to expect** [ɪk'spekt] — ожидать

Refrain

And it's morning I knew
What I had to do —
Take the next plane
And finally go.

Refrain

What Do You Think?

12 Which of these proverbs are true? Explain why.

- 1) A thing of beauty is a joy for ever.
- 2) All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.
- 3) Bussines before pleasure.

Do It on Your Own

13 Use prepositions where necessary.

- 1) Young Albert has always been devoted ... music.
- 2) The garden was full ... beautiful flowers — pansies, daisies, poppies and bluebells.
- 3) The libretto ... the opera was based ... an old Italian legend.
- 4) John devoted himself ... writing songs.
- 5) We went ... a concert of Prokofiev's music.
- 6) Our flat is not very large and we receive ... guests ... the living room.
- 7) Jane graduated ... college three years ago.
- 8) The famous ballet "The Nutcracker" ... Tchaikovsky is based ... the fairy tale of the same name ... Hofmann.
- 9) Hard rock is the kind of music not ... everybody's taste.
- 10) Mr Morrison was a man ... honour and always kept his word.

14 Write English equivalents for these.

A. Пахнуть сладко, чувствовать себя хорошо, чувствовать себя плохо, выглядеть молодо, звучать приятно, разговаривать холодно, смотреть сердито, звучать громко, разговаривать громко, быть на вкус сладким.

B. Принимать гостей, сочинять музыку, музыка, наполненная чувством, заканчивать консерваторию, известный дирижёр, преданный друг, быть основанным на сказке, мёртвая

птица, посвятить симфонию родителям, сочинить балет, посвятить свою жизнь пению, вдохновлять аудиторию, дирижировать оркестром, настоящее вдохновение.

Check Your Progress

15 Write TEST 6 (Workbook 2, pp. 124–128) and check your results.

Tasks	1	2	3	4	5		6	7	8	Total
					a	b				
Maximum result	5	5	4	8	7	7	3	10	12	61
Your result										

Dear All,
We hope you have enjoyed your English. See you again next school year. Enjoy your summer holidays!
The authors

263

Step Five

Вопросы для самооценки

1. Какие из разделов учебника оказались самыми сложными? Как вы думаете, почему?
2. В каких грамматических явлениях вы допустили ошибки?
3. Какая лексика требует дальнейшей отработки?
4. Что могло бы вам помочь лучше справиться с заданиями по говорению? Письму?
5. Приходилось ли вам при выполнении заданий обращаться за дополнительной помощью к своему учителю? Родителям?
6. Использовали ли вы при выполнении заданий дополнительные ресурсы: справочники, Интернет?
7. Насколько вы довольны своими результатами?

А

264

ache [eɪk] больa **backache** ['bækɪk] боль в спинеan **earache** ['ɪərəɪk] боль в ухеa **headache** ['hedɪk] головная больa **stomachache** ['stʌməkeɪk] боль в животе**act** [ækt] 1) действовать, поступать; 2) исполнять (роль), игратьto **act in a performance** играть в спектакле**actor** ['æktə] актёр**actress** ['æktɪs] актриса**acrobat**² ['ækɹəbæt] акробат**adjective*** ['ædʒɪktɪv] имя прилагательное**advantage** [əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ] преимущество**advertisement** [əd'vɜ:tizmənt] реклама**agree** [ə'gri:] соглашатьсяto **agree to sth/with sb** соглашаться с чем-л./кем-л.**air** [eə] воздух**in the open air** на открытом воздухе**alcohol** ['ælkəhɒl] алкоголь**alive** [ə'laɪv] живой**all** [ɔ:l] все, весь, всё, вся**at all** совсем, вовсе**alligator** ['ælgeɪtə] аллигатор**along*** [ə'lɒŋ] вдоль, по**alphabet** ['ælfəbet] алфавит**alphabetically** [ælfə'betɪkli] в алфавитном порядке**already** [ɔ:l'reɪdɪ] уже**also** ['ɔ:lsəʊ] тоже, также**altogether*** [ɔ:ltə'geðə] в целом**among** [ə'mʌŋ] среди**ancient** ['eɪnʃ(ə)nt] древний**another** [ə'nʌðə] другой**anteater** ['ænti:tə] муравьед**appear** [ə'piə] появляться**applaud** [ə'plɔ:d] аплодировать**applause** [ə'plɔ:z] аплодисменты¹ Транскрипция в словаре, как и везде в учебнике, даётся по Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced Learners, 2002.² Звёздочкой обозначены слова, которые встречаются в учебнике 1—2 раза и не предназначены для заучивания.

a storm of applause шквал (буря) аплодисментов
arena [ə'ri:nə] арена
arrival [ə'raɪvl] прибытие
arrive [ə'raɪv] прибывать
to arrive at/in прибывать в
associate [ə'səʊsi'eɪt] ассоциировать
association [ə'səʊsi'eɪʃn] ассоциация
athlete ['æθli:t] спортсмен, атлет
athletic [æθ'letɪk] атлетический
athletics [æθ'letɪks] атлетика
attention [ə'tenʃn] внимание
to pay attention обращать внимание
attentive [ə'tentɪv] внимательный
to be attentive to sb/sth быть внимательным к кому-л./чему-л.
audience ['ɔ:diəns] аудитория
autumn ['ɔ:təm] осень

В

badge [bædʒ] значок
badminton ['bædmɪntən] бадминтон
bake* [beɪk] выпекать
balcony ['bælkəni] балкон
ballet ['bæleɪ] балет
band [bænd] музыкальная группа, оркестр
banjo* ['bændʒəʊ] банджо
barefoot* ['beəfʊt] босой, босоногий
to walk barefoot ходить босиком
baseball ['beɪsbɔ:l] бейсбол
based (on) [beɪst] основанный (на)
battle ['bætl] битва
bathe* [beɪð] купаться
beech [bi:tʃ] бук
behaviour [bi'heɪvjə] поведение
belong [br'lɒŋ] принадлежать
to belong to sb/sth принадлежать кому-л./чему-л.
besides [bi'saɪdz] кроме, кроме того
between [bi'twi:n] между (двумя объектами)
bicycle ['baɪsɪkl] велосипед
bilingual [baɪ'lɪŋgwəl] двуязычный
biscuit ['bɪskɪt] печенье
blackbird ['blækbɜ:d] дрозд
bluebell* ['blu:bel] колокольчик

bookworm* ['bʊkwɜ:m] книжный червь (*перен.*)

border ['bɔ:də] 1) *n* граница; 2) *v* граничить

to **border on sth** граничить с чем-л.

bow* [baʊ] поклон

box [bɒks] ложа

a **box office** ['bɒks ɒfɪs] театральная касса

boxing ['bɒksɪŋ] бокс

brand-new [brænd 'nju:] новый, с иголки

breathe [bri:ð] дышать

brick [brɪk] кирпич

bring [brɪŋ] приносить

to **bring back** вернуть

budget ['bʌdʒɪt] 1) *n* бюджет; 2) *v* распределить время

buffalo ['bʌfələʊ] буйвол, бизон

buffet ['bʊfeɪ] буфет

build [bɪld] строить

building ['bɪldɪŋ] здание, строение

butterfly ['bʌtəflaɪ] бабочка

by [baɪ] у, около, рядом, возле, при

by and by постепенно, мало-помалу

C

café ['kæfeɪ] кафе

call [kɔ:l] звонить, звать

can* [kæn] консервная банка

canary [kə'neəri] канарейка

candidate ['kændɪdət] кандидат

sandy (*AmE*) ['kændi] конфета

car park (*BrE*) ['kɑ: pɑ:k] стоянка для машин

carbon dioxide* [kɑ:bən daɪ'ɒksaɪd] углекислый газ

cardboard ['kɑ:dbɔ:d] картон

earnation [kɑ:'neɪʃn] гвоздика

carpenter ['kɑ:pɪntə] плотник

carton* ['kɑ:tn] пакет (*упаковка*)

category ['kætɪg(ə)rɪ] категория

chain [tʃeɪn] цепь

a **golden chain** золотая цепь

a **chain of mountains** горная цепь

character ['kærəktə] герой (*действующее лицо пьесы, литературного произведения*)

charming* ['tʃɑ:mɪŋ] очаровательный

chemist's (*BrE*) ['kemɪsts] аптека

childless ['tʃɪldləs] бездетный

chin* [tʃɪn] подбородок

china [ˈtʃaɪnə] фарфор

chips (AmE) [tʃɪps] хрустящий картофель

chorus* [ˈkɔːrəs] хор

chrysanthemum [krɪˈsæntʰɪmətəm] хризантема

cinema [ˈsɪnəmə] кино, кинотеатр

circle [ˈsɜːkl] ярус

circus [ˈsɜːkəs] цирк

to go to the circus пойти в цирк

to take sb to the circus сводить кого-л. в цирк

civilization [ˌsɪvəlaɪˈzeɪʃn] цивилизация

climate [ˈklaɪmɪt] климат

climb [klaɪm] взбираться, лезть наверх

cloakroom [ˈkləʊkrʊm] гардероб (*в театре*)

clown* [klaʊn] клоун

coast [kəʊst] побережье

collect [kəˈlekt] собирать

collection [kəˈleɪʃn] коллекция

colloquial* [kəˈləʊkwɪəl] разговорный

column [ˈkɒləm] колонна

comedy [ˈkɒmədi] комедия

committee [kəˈmɪti] комитет

common [ˈkɒmən] обычный, часто встречающийся

compete [kəmˈpiːt] соревноваться

competition [ˌkɒmpəˈɪʃn] соревнование

complication [ˌkɒmplɪˈkeɪʃn] осложнение

to develop complications получить осложнения

compose [kəmˈpəʊz] сочинять

composer [kəmˈpəʊzə] композитор

composition [ˌkɒmpəˈzɪʃn] сочинение

concert [ˈkɒnsət] концерт

concerto [kənˈtʃɜːtəʊ] концерт (*музыкальное произведение*)

conduct [kənˈdʌkt] дирижировать

to conduct an orchestra дирижировать оркестром

conductor [kənˈdʌktə] дирижёр

conference [ˌkɒnf(ə)rəns] конференция

connect [kəˈnekt] соединять

to connect sb/sth to sb/sth соединить кого-л./что-л. с кем-л./чем-л.

conservatory [kənˈsɜːvətəri] консерватория

consider [kənˈsɪdə] полагать

to consider doing sth обдумывать какое-л. действие

to be considered to be считаться кем-л.

continent [ˈkɒntɪnənt] континент

cooker [ˈkʊkə] плита

- cookie (*AmE*) ['kuki] печенье (*домашнее*)
 cornflower ['kɔ:nflaʊə] василёк
 costume ['kɒstju:m] костюм (*театр.*)
 cotton ['kɒtn] хлопок
 cough [kɒf] 1) *n* кашель; 2) *v* кашлять
 to **have a bad cough** сильно кашлять
 countryside ['kʌntɹisaɪd] деревня, сельская местность
 coyote* ['kɔɪəʊt] койот
 crocodile ['krɒkədəɪl] крокодил
 crow [krəʊ] ворона
 cultivate ['kʌltɪveɪt] выращивать, культивировать
 culture ['kʌltʃə] культура
 cure [kjʊə] вылечить
 to **cure of sth** вылечить от чего-л.
 curtain ['kɜ:tɪn] занавес
 cut [kʌt] резать
 to **cut down** рубить, срубить
 cycle ['saɪkl] кататься на велосипеде
 cycling ['saɪkllɪŋ] езда на велосипеде

D

- daffodil ['dæfədɪl] нарцисс
 daisy ['deɪzi] маргаритка, ромашка
 damage ['dæmɪʃ] повреждать, наносить ущерб
 dandelion ['dændɪləɪən] одуванчик
 danger ['deɪndʒə] опасность
 dangerous ['deɪndʒərəs] опасный
 dead [ded] мёртвый
 deep [di:p] глубокий
 deeply ['di:pli] глубоко
 derivative* [dɪ'rivətɪv] производное слово
 desert ['dezət] пустыня
 desperate ['desp(ə)rət] серьёзный, отчаянный, радикальный
 destroy [dɪ'strɔɪ] разрушать
 develop [dɪ'veləp] развивать(ся)
 to **develop into sb/sth** превратиться в кого-л./что-л.
 devote (to) [dɪ'vəʊt] посвятить
 to **devote oneself to** посвятить себя
 devoted [dɪ'vəʊtɪd] преданный
 diabetes* [daɪə'bi:tɪz] сахарная болезнь, диабет
 dictionary ['dɪkʃən(ə)rɪ] словарь
 a **dictionary entry** словарная статья
 diet ['daɪət] диета

dimple* ['dɪmpəl] ямочка
dinosaur ['daɪnəsɔː] динозавр
disagree [dɪsə'grɪː] не соглашаться
disappear [dɪsə'pɪə] исчезнуть
disc [dɪsk] диск
disco ['dɪskəʊ] дискотека
discover [dɪs'kʌvə] сделать открытие, открыть
discovery [dɪs'kʌv(ə)rɪ] открытие
dodo* ['dɒdɒdəʊ] дронг
dolphin* ['dɒlfɪn] дельфин
domestic* [də'mestɪk] домашний
domesticate* [də'mestɪkət] приручать (*о животных*)
dragonfly ['dræɡən,flaɪ] стрекоза
drama ['drɑːmə] драма
dramatist ['dræmətɪst] драматург
drug [drʌɡ] наркотик
drugstore (AmE) ['drʌɡstɔː] аптека
duel* ['djuːəl] дуэль
dump [dʌmp] свалка
dustbin ['dʌstbɪn] мусорный бак

E

each [iːtʃ] каждый
earth [ɜːθ] земля
easy ['iːzi] лёгкий
easily ['iːzɪli] легко
ecologist [iː'kɒlədʒɪst] эколог
ecology [iː'kɒlədʒi] экология
edelweiss ['edlvaɪs] эдельвейс
electricity [ɪ,lek'trɪsətɪ] электричество
elephant ['elɪfənt] слон
elevator (AmE) ['elɪveɪtə] лифт
elm [elm] вяз
emblem ['embləm] эмблема
emotion [ɪ'məʊʃn] эмоция, чувство
emotional [ɪ'məʊʃn(ə)l] эмоциональный
endangered [ɪn'deɪndʒəd] исчезающий, вымирающий
energy ['enədʒɪ] энергия
enough [ɪ'naʊ] достаточно
entertainment [ˌentə'teɪnmənt] развлечение
environment [ɪn'vaɪənmənt] окружающая среда
event [ɪ'vent] событие

ever [ˈevə] когда-нибудь
evergreen(s) [ˈevəɡri:n] вечнозелёные растения
examine [ɪɡˈzæmɪn] осматривать (*внимательно*)
example [ɪɡˈzɑ:mpl] пример

for example например

except* [ɪkˈsept] кроме
excite [ɪkˈsaɪt] возбуждать, волновать
excited [ɪkˈsaɪtɪd] взволнованный
exciting [ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ] волнующий
exercise [ˈeksəsaɪz] упражнение (*исчисл.*), физическая активность (*неисчисл.*)
expand* [ɪkˈspænd] распространять, расширять
expect* [ɪkˈspekt] ожидать
expedition [ˌeksprəˈdɪʃn] экспедиция
expensive [ɪkˈspensɪv] дорогой
experience [ɪkˈspɪəriəns] опыт
explain [ɪkˈspleɪn] объяснять
extinct [ɪkˈstɪŋkt] исчезнувший, вымерший

F

fact [fækt] факт
in fact в сущности, фактически
factory [ˈfæktəri] фабрика
fall (AmE) [fɔ:l] осень
fall [fɔ:l] падать
to fall in love влюбиться
fantastic [fænˈtæstɪk] фантастический, потрясающий
fast [fɑ:st] 1) *adj* быстрый; 2) *adv* быстро
faucet (AmE) [ˈfɔ:sɪt] водопроводный кран
fauna [ˈfɔ:nə] фауна, животный мир
feather* [ˈfedə] перо
field [fi:ld] поле
figure [ˈfi:gə] 1) цифра; 2) фигура
figure skating [ˈfi:gə ˌskeɪtɪŋ] фигурное катание
film [fɪlm] 1) кинофильм; 2) киноплёнка
an action film боевик
an adventure film приключенческий фильм
a crime film детектив
a horror film фильм ужасов
a psychological film психологическая драма
a science fiction film научно-фантастический фильм
fir (tree) [fɜ:] ель
flamingo [fləˈmɪŋɡəʊ] фламинго

flora ['flɔːrə] флора, растительный мир

flow [fləʊ] течь

to **flow east (north, etc.)** течь на восток (север и т. д.)

to **flow into the ocean** впадать в океан

folk [fɔːk] народный

follow ['fɒləʊ] следовать (за)

to **follow sth** следовать чему-л.

following ['fɒləʊɪŋ] следующий

on the following day на следующий день

foot [fʊt] 1) ступня; 2) фут (*единица измерения длины = 12 дюймов =*

= 0,3048 м)

forget [fə'get] забывать

forget-me-not [fə'get mi ,nɒt] незабудка

found [faʊnd] основывать

foyer ['fɔɪə] фойе

French fries [frentʃ 'fraɪz] жареный картофель

fried* [fraɪd] жареный

fresh [freʃ] свежий

to **look fresh** выглядеть свежим, отдохнувшим

fresh water пресная вода

full [fʊl] полный

to **be full of** быть наполненным

full-time student студент-очник

future ['fjuːtʃə] 1) *n* будущее; 2) *adj* будущий

in the near future в ближайшем будущем

G

gallery ['gæləri] галёрка

gallon* ['gælən] галлон (*единица измерения объёма = 8 пинт = 4,546 л*)

game [geɪm] игра

garbage ['gɑːbɪdʒ] мусор

a **garbage can** *AmE* ['gɑːbɪdʒ ,kæn] мусорный ящик

gas(oline) (*AmE*) ['gæsəliːn] бензин

geology [dʒi'ɒlədʒi] геология

giraffe [dʒi'raːf] жираф

gladiator ['glædiətə] гладиатор

globe* [gləʊb] 1) глобус; 2) земной шар

go down (up) гаснуть; загораться (*об огнях, свете*)

God [gɒd] Бог

gold [gəʊld] 1) *n* золото; 2) *adj* золотой

golf [gɒlf] гольф

good [gʊd] хороший

to **be good at sth** уметь что-то хорошо делать

government [ˈgʌvnmənt] правительство
 graduate [ˈgrædʒueɪt] окончить высшее учебное заведение
 to graduate from university окончить университет
 grammar [ˈgræmə] грамматика
 grizzly bear [ˈgrɪzliː ˈbeə] медведь гризли
 grow [grəʊ] выращивать, расти (о растениях)
 to grow up расти (о животных и людях)
 to grow into sb превращаться в кого-л.
 growth [grəʊθ] рост
 guest [gest] гость
 gull [gʌl] чайка

Н

habit [ˈhæbɪt] привычка
 habitat [ˈhæbɪtət] место обитания
 half-full [ˈhɑːf ˌfʊl] наполовину заполненный
 handy* [ˈhændi] ловкий, умелый, рукастый
 hard [hɑːd] 1) *adj* тяжёлый, трудный; 2) *adv* усердно, упорно
 hardly [ˈhɑːdli] едва
 hare [heə] заяц
 harm [hɑːm] вред
 head [hed] 1) *n* голова; 2) *v* возглавлять
 health [helθ] здоровье
 healthy [ˈhelθi] здоровый
 heat* [hi:t] жара
 hedgehog [ˈhedʒhɒg] ёж
 herself [hɜːˈself] сама себя
 himself [hɪmˈself] сам себя
 historian [hɪˈstɔːriən] историк
 historic [hɪˈstɒrɪk] исторический
 hitch [hɪtʃ] привязывать, прицеплять
 hole* [həʊl] нора
 homework [ˈhəʊmwɜːk] домашнее задание
 honour [ˈɒnə] честь
 horn* [hɔːn] рог
 hunt [hʌnt] охотиться
 hurt [hɜːt] причинять боль
 It hurts to walk. Больно ходить.

И

ice [aɪs] лёд
 ice hockey [ˈaɪs ˌhɒki] хоккей на льду

imaginary [ɪ'mæʃɪnəri] воображаемый
immigrant ['ɪmɪgrənt] иммигрант
impossible [ɪm'pɒsəbl] невозможный
impress [ɪm'pres] производить впечатление
impression [ɪm'preʃn] впечатление
to **make an impression on sb** производить впечатление на кого-л.
improvise* ['ɪmprəvaɪz] импровизировать
inch* [ɪntʃ] дюйм (*единица измерения длины = 2,54 см*)
include [ɪn'klu:d] включать
including [ɪn'klu:dɪŋ] включая
industrial [ɪn'dʌstriəl] индустриальный, промышленный
influence ['ɪnfluəns] влияние
insect ['ɪnsekt] насекомое
inspire [ɪn'spaɪə] вдохновлять
inspired [ɪn'spaɪəd] вдохновлённый
instruct* [ɪn'strʌkt] инструктировать, учить
interior* [ɪn'tɪəriə] интерьер
international [ɪntə'næʃn(ə)l] международный
interview ['ɪntəvju:] интервью
introduce [ɪntrə'dju:s] представлять
to **introduce sb to sb** представлять кого-л. кому-л.
Let me introduce myself. Разрешите представиться.
invite [ɪn'vaɪt] приглашать
to **invite to some place** приглашать куда-л.
to **invite for dinner** приглашать к обеду
invitation [ɪnvɪ'teɪʃn] приглашение
island ['aɪlənd] остров
isolation [aɪsə'leɪʃn] изоляция
item* ['aɪtəm] пункт

J

jazz [ʃæz] джаз
jog [ʃɒg] 1) *n* бег трусцой; 2) *v* бегать трусцой
join [ʃɔɪn] присоединяться
judo ['dʒu:dəʊ] дзюдо
junk food ['ʃʌŋk fu:d] неполноценная пища
just [ʃʌst] только что

K

keep [ki:p] держать
kilometre ['kɪlə'mi:tə] километр

kind [kaɪnd] вид, род, разновидность
kind of strange несколько странный
kind of pretty довольно хорошенький
kitten ['kɪtn] котёнок
koala bear [kəʊ,ɑ:lə 'beə] коала

L

274

land [lənd] земля, суша
a piece of land клочок суши, участок
language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] язык
a parent language праязык
large [la:dʒ] большой
last [lɑ:st] последний
at last наконец
law* [lɔ:] закон
to make laws создавать (*писать*) законы
lazily ['leɪzɪli] лениво
leek [li:k] лук-порей
length [leŋθ] длина
librarian* [laɪbrɛəriən] библиотекарь
library ['laɪbrəri] библиотека
lie [laɪ] лежать
to lie on the river быть расположенным на реке
lift [lɪft] лифт
likes [laɪks] то, что нравится
likes and dislikes любимые и нелюбимые (*занятия, вещи*)
lilac ['laɪlək] сирень
hilly of the valley [ˌhɪli əv ðə 'vælɪ] ландыш
lion ['laɪən] лев
liquid* ['lɪkwɪd] жидкость
lizard* ['lɪzəd] ящерица
local ['ləʊkl] местный
long [lɒŋ] длинный
a long jump ['lɒŋ ,dʒʌmp] прыжок в длину
look [lʊk] смотреть
to look the word up смотреть слово в словаре
lorry ['lɒri] грузовик
lose [lu:z] терять
loud [laʊd] громкий
loudly ['laʊdli] громко
love [lʌv] 1) *n* любовь; 2) *v* любить
to be in love любить, быть влюблённым
to fall in love влюбиться
love of sth любовь к чему-л.

M

mad* [mæd] сумасшедший
magic(al) ['mædʒɪk(l)] волшебный
maple ['meɪpl] клён
maybe ['meɪbi] может быть
meadow* ['medəʊ] луг
meal [mi:l] трапеза
measure ['meɪʒə] 1) л измерение; 2) v мерить
medical ['medɪkl] медицинский
medicine ['medsɪn] 1) медицина; 2) лекарство
member ['membə] член
mention* ['menʃən] упоминать
mentioned* ['menʃnd] упомянутый
metre ['mi:tə] метр
microscope ['maɪkrə'skəʊp] микроскоп
mighty ['maɪti] могущественный, могучий
mile* [maɪl] миля (*единица измерения длины*)
mind [maɪnd] ум, разум
monkey ['mɒŋki] обезьяна
monolingual [ˌmɒnəʊ'lɪŋgwəl] одноязычный
moon [mu:n] луна
moor* [muə] вересковая пустошь
moral* ['mɒrəl] мораль
mostly ['məʊstli] в основном
move [mu:v] двигаться
movie (AmE) ['mu:vi] кино
multilingual [ˌmʌlti'lɪŋgwəl] многоязычный
music ['mjuzɪk] музыка
 а **music band** ['mjuzɪk bænd] музыкальная группа
musician ['mjuzɪʃn] музыкант
myself [maɪ'self] я сам

N

nationality [ˌnæʃə'næləti] национальность
natural ['nætʃ(ə)rəl] естественный, натуральный, природный
nature ['neɪtʃə] природа
necessary ['nesɪs(ə)rɪ] необходимый
need [ni:d] нуждаться
nightingale ['naɪtɪŋgeɪl] соловей
noble ['nəʊbl] благородный
noun* [naʊn] имя существительное

nowadays ['naʊədeɪz] в наше время

number ['nʌmbə] номер

nutcracker* ['nʌt,kɹækə] 1) *обыкн. pl* щипцы для орехов; 2) (the Nutcracker)
«Щелкунчик»

О

276

oak [əʊk] дуб

official [ə'fɪʃl] официальный

only ['əʊnli] только

an **only child** единственный ребёнок

opera ['ɒp(ə)rə] опера

opera glasses театральные очки

opinion [ə'pɪnjən] мнение

opossum [ə'pɒsəm] опоссум

opponent [ə'reɪnənt] оппонент

orchestra ['ɔ:kɪstrə] оркестр

orchestra pit* ['ɔ:kɪstrə ,pɪt] оркестровая яма

organize ['ɔ:gənaɪz] организовывать

ostrich ['ɒstrɪtʃ] страус

other ['ʌðə] другие

in other words другими словами

others ['ʌðəz] другие

ounce [aʊns] унция (*единица измерения веса – 28,35 г*)

ourselves [aʊə'selvz] мы сами, себя

over ['əʊvə] сверх

overcome* [əʊvə 'kʌm] преодолеть

overture* ['əʊvətʃʊə] увертюра

owl [aʊl] сова

oxygen* ['ɒksɪdʒ(ə)n] кислород

Р

rain [reɪn] боль

to be in pain испытывать боль

rainful ['reɪnfl] болезненный

palm [pɑ:m] пальма

panda ['pændə] панда

pansy ['pænzɪ] анютины глазки (*цветок*)

parachute ['pærəʃu:t] парашют

perfect ['pɜ:fɪkt] совершенный

polar bear [pəʊlə 'beə] полярный медведь

politician [pə'lɪtʃɪn] политик

pollute [pə'lu:t] загрязнять

polluter [pə'lu:tə] источник загрязнений (*окружающей среды*)

pollution [pə'lu:ʃn] загрязнение

poppy ['pɒpi] мак

popular ['pɒpjələ] популярный

to be popular with sb пользоваться популярностью среди кого-л.

population [ˌpɒpjə'leɪʃn] население

possible ['pɒsəbl] возможный

whenever possible когда возможно

wherever possible где возможно

pound* [paʊnd] фунт (*единица измерения веса = 0,453 кг*)

power ['paʊə] сила, власть, мощь

powerful ['paʊəfʊl] мощный

practically ['præktikli] практически

prefer [prɪ'fɜ:] предпочитать

to prefer sth to sth предпочитать что-л. чему-л.

prehistoric [ˌpri:hi'stɔrɪk] доисторический

prescribe [prɪ'skraɪb] прописывать

to prescribe sb a medicine for sth прописывать кому-л. лекарство от чего-л.

prescription [prɪ'skrɪpʃən] рецепт

to write out a prescription for sth выписать рецепт от чего-л.

president ['prezɪdənt] президент

previous* ['pri:vɪəs] предыдущий

price [praɪs] цена

probable ['prɒbəbl] вероятный

probably ['prɒbəbli] вероятно

programme ['prəʊgræm] программа

pronounce* [prə'naʊns] произносить

pronunciation* [prəˌnʌnsi'eɪʃn] произношение

protect [prə'tekt] защищать

protected [prə'tektɪd] защищённый

proud [praʊd] гордый

to be proud of sb/sth гордиться кем-л./чем-л.

prove [pru:v] доказывать

puffin* ['pʌfɪn] тупик (*название птицы*)

pumpkin vine* ['rʌmpkɪn vaɪn] тыквенный стебель

R

rabbit ['ræbɪt] кролик

race [reɪs] забег, заезд

railroad* ['reɪlroʊd] железная дорога

reaction* [ri'ækʃn] реакция

reap [ri:p] жать (*серпом*)

reappear [ri:ə'piə] появиться вновь

receive [ri'si:v] получать

to receive guests принимать гостей

recite [ri'saɪt] декламировать, читать наизусть

recording* [ri'kɔ:diŋ] запись

recycle [ri:'saɪkl] перерабатывать

regular ['regjələ] регулярный

regularly ['regjələli] регулярно

relation [ri'leɪjən] 1) родственник; 2) отношение

relax [ri'læks] расслабляться

religious [ri'liʒjəs] религиозный

remedy ['remədi] лечение, лечебное средство

remember [ri'membə] помнить

to remember to do sth не забыть что-л. сделать

residence [ri'zɪd(ə)ns] резиденция

responsible [ri'spɒnsəbl] ответственный

(the) rich [riʃ] 1) *n* богатые (*люди*); 2) *adj* богатый

rise [raɪz] подниматься, вставать

to rise up подниматься

to rise from the table вставать из-за стола

root [ru:t] корень

row [rəʊ] ряд

rows of seats ряды кресел

rubbish ['rʌbɪʃ] мусор

rugby ['rʌgbi] регби

S

safe* [seɪf] безопасный

same [seɪm] тот же самый, такой же

at the same time в то же самое время

save [seɪv] спасать

scenery ['si:nəri] (*pl*) декорации

science ['saɪəns] наука

science and technology наука и техника

a science teacher учитель естественных наук

a field of science область науки

scientific [saɪən'tɪfɪk] научный

scientist ['saɪəntɪst] учёный

score [skɔ:] счёт

to score a goal забить гол

What's the score? Какой счёт?

screen [skri:n] экран
seagull ['si:gəl] чайка
seek* [si:k] искать
seem [si:m] казаться

It seems to me. Мне кажется.

shamrock [ˈʃæmrɒk] белый клевер, трилистник

share* [ʃeə] делиться

shave* [ʃeɪv] бриться

sidewalk (AmE) [ˈsaɪdwɔ:k] тротуар

silent [ˈsaɪlənt] немой (о фильме)

silver [ˈsɪlvə] 1) *n* серебро; 2) *adj* серебряный

since [sɪns] с тех пор как

size [saɪz] размер

skyscraper [ˈskaɪskreɪpə] небоскрёб

slow [sləʊ] медленный

slowly [ˈsləʊli] медленно

smell [smel] 1) *n* запах; 2) *v* пахнуть; нюхать

smoke [sməʊk] дым

snake [sneɪk] змея

sneeze [sni:z] чихать

snowdrop [ˈsnəʊdrɒp] подснежник

soil [sɔɪl] 1) *n* земля; 2) *v* пачкать

solve* [sɒlv] разрешать (проблемы)

sound [saʊnd] 1) *n* звук; 2) *v* звучать

to sound good звучать привлекательно

sow [səʊ] сеять

species [ˈspi:ʃi:z] вид(ы)

speech [spi:tʃ] речь

to make a speech произнести речь

speechless [ˈspi:tʃləs] онемевший

squirrel [ˈskwɪrəl] белка

stadium [ˈsteɪdiəm] стадион

stage [steɪʒ] сцена

stalls [stɔ:lz] партер

station [ˈsteɪʃn] станция

steel [sti:l] 1) *n* сталь; 2) *adj* стальной

still [stɪl] всё ещё

stone [stəʊn] 1) камень; 2) стоун (единица измерения веса = 6,3 кг); 3) косточка

stove [stəʊv] плита

stretch [stretʃ] простираться, тянуться

to stretch as far as простираться до

to stretch far далеко простираться

to stretch for miles простираться на многие километры (мили)

to stretch east (north) простираться на восток (север)
 stroke [strɒk] удар
 structure ['strʌktʃə] структура
 strum* [strʌm] брэнчать, тренькать
 style [stɑɪl] стиль
 such [sʌtʃ] такой
 sunflower ['sʌn,flaʊə] подсолнух
 support [sə'pɔ:t] 1) *n* поддержка; 2) *v* поддерживать
 sure [ʃʊ:] надёжный, надёжно
 surround [sə'raʊnd] окружать
 surroundings [sə'raʊndɪŋz] (*pl*) окрестности
 survive [sə'vaɪv] выживать
 swallow ['swɒləʊ] 1) *n* ласточка; 2) *v* глотать
 swan [swɒn] лебедь
 sweet [swi:t] сладкий
 symphony ['sɪmfəni] симфония

T

tag question ['tæg kwestʃən] разделительный вопрос
 talk [tɔ:k] беседа, разговор
 a small talk* светская беседа
 talkie ['tɔ:ki] звуковой фильм
 tap [tæp] водопроводный кран
 taste [teɪst] 1) *n* вкус; 2) *v* пробовать
 Tastes differ. О вкусах не спорят.
 team [ti:m] команда
 technology [tek'nɒlədʒi] 1) техника; 2) технология
 teenager* ['ti:neɪdʒə] подросток (*тинейджер*)
 territory ['terətəri] территория
 themselves [ðəm'selvz] они сами
 theory ['θiəri] теория
 thistle ['θɪsl] чертополох
 thrill [θrɪl] дрожь, трепет, восхищение
 thrilling ['θrɪlɪŋ] приводящий в трепет, восхищение
 thriller ['θrɪlə] остросюжетный фильм, триллер
 ticket ['tɪkɪt] билет
 a cinema ticket билет в кино
 a lottery ticket лотерейный билет
 a plane ticket билет на самолёт
 a train ticket билет на поезд
 a ticket for a performance билет на представление
 a ticket to a place билет куда-л.
 tiger ['taɪgə] тигр

a tiger lily ['tɪgə ˌlɪli] тигровая лилия

time [taɪm] 1) время; 2) раз

several times несколько раз

many times много раз

the first time в первый раз

toxic ['tɒksɪk] токсичный

tragedy ['trædʒədi] трагедия

tremble ['treɪbl] дрожать

trouble* ['trʌbl] беда, неприятность

to be in trouble попасть в беду

truck (AmE) [trʌk] грузовик

true [tru:] правдивый

a true friend настоящий друг

truly ['tru:li] действительно

truth [tru:θ] правда

tundra ['tʌndrə] тундра

tuneful ['tju:nfl] мелодичный

tyrannosaurus* [ˌtɪrənəˈsɔ:zəs] тираннозавр (*вид динозавров*)

U

unfortunately [ʌnˈfɔ:tʃ(ə)nətli] к несчастью

unpolluted [ʌnpəˈlu:tɪd] незагрязнённый

unwashed [ʌnˈwɒʃt] невымытый

useless ['ju:sləs] бесполезный

V

valley ['væli] долина

violet ['vaɪələt] фиалка

virus* ['vaɪərəs] вирус

vocabulary [vəˈkæbjʊləri] 1) словарный состав языка; 2) словарный запас

voice [vɔɪs] 1) голос; 2) залог

volcano [vɒlˈkeɪnəʊ] вулкан

W

wagon ['wæɡən] повозка, телега

wait [weɪt] ждать

to wait for sb/sth ждать кого-л./что-л.

a war [wɔ:] война

warlike ['wɔ:lɪk] воинственный

washing machine ['wɒʃɪŋ məˌʃi:n] стиральная машина

waste [weɪst] отходы
water ['wɔ:tə] вода
 a **water lily** ['wɔ:tə ,lɪli] водяная лилия
 a **waterfall** ['wɔ:təfɔ:l] водопад
 a **water polo** ['wɔ:tə ,pəʊləʊ] водное поло
 water skiing ['wɔ:tə ,ski:ŋ] катание на водных лыжах
way [weɪ] 1) путь; 2) метод, способ
wealth [welθ] богатство, благосостояние
weigh [weɪ] взвешивать, весить
weight [weɪt] вес
weightlifting ['weɪt,lɪftɪŋ] поднятие тяжестей
whale* [weɪl] кит
whistle* ['wɪsl] свисток
width [wɪð] ширина
wild [waɪld] дикий
wine* [waɪn] вино
wink* [wɪŋk] моргать, мигать
wisdom ['wɪzdəm] мудрость
without [wɪð'aʊt] без
wolf [wʊlf] волк
wonder ['wʌndə] интересоваться
 no wonder неудивительно
wood [wʊd] дерево
woodpecker ['wʊd,pɛkə] дятел
wool [wʊl] шерсть
work out ['wɜ:k aʊt] 1) тренироваться; 2) вырабатывать

Y

yard* [jɑ:d] ярд (*единица измерения длины = 91,44 см*)
yet [jet] ещё
yourself [jɔ:'self] ты сам
yourselves [jɔ:'selvz] вы сами, себя

Z

zebra ['zi:brə] зебра

Таблица неправильных глаголов

be [bi:]	was/were [wɒz]/[wɜ:]	been [bi:n]	<i>быть</i>
become [bɪ'kʌm]	became [bɪ'keɪm]	become [bɪ'kʌm]	<i>становиться, являться</i>
begin [bɪ'gɪn]	began [bɪ'gæn]	begun [bɪ'gʌn]	<i>начинать</i>
blow [bləʊ]	blew [blu:]	blown [bleʊn]	<i>дуть</i>
break [breɪk]	broke [brəʊk]	broken [brəʊkən]	<i>ломать</i>
bring [brɪŋ]	brought [brɔ:t]	brought [brɔ:t]	<i>приносить</i>
build [bɪld]	built [bɪlt]	built [bɪlt]	<i>строить</i>
burn [bɜ:n]	burnt [bɜ:nt]	burnt [bɜ:nt]	<i>жечь, гореть</i>
buy [baɪ]	bought [bɔ:t]	bought [bɔ:t]	<i>покупать</i>
can [kæn]	could [kʊd]		<i>мочь</i>
catch [kætʃ]	caught [kɔ:t]	caught [kɔ:t]	<i>схватить</i>
choose [tʃu:z]	chose [tʃəʊz]	chosen [tʃəʊzən]	<i>выбирать</i>
come [kʌm]	came [keɪm]	come [kʌm]	<i>приходить</i>
cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	cut [kʌt]	<i>резать</i>
do [du:]	did [dɪd]	done [dʌn]	<i>делать</i>
draw [drɔ:]	drew [dru:]	drawn [drɔ:n]	<i>рисовать</i>
dream [dri:m]	dreamed/ dreamt [dremt]	dreamed/ dreamt [dremt]	<i>мечтать</i>
drink [drɪŋk]	drank [dræŋk]	drunk [drʌŋk]	<i>пить</i>
drive [draɪv]	drove [drəʊv]	driven [ˈdrɪvən]	<i>водить (машину и т. п.)</i>
eat [i:t]	ate [et]	eaten [i:tn]	<i>есть</i>
fall [fɔ:l]	fell [fel]	fallen [ˈfɔ:lən]	<i>падать</i>
fight [faɪt]	fought [fɔ:t]	fought [fɔ:t]	<i>драться, сра- жаться</i>
find [faɪnd]	found [faʊnd]	found [faʊnd]	<i>находить</i>

fly [flaɪ]	flew [flu:]	flown [fləʊn]	<i>летать</i>
forget [fə'get]	forgot [fə'gɒt]	forgotten [fə'gɒtn]	<i>забывать</i>
get [get]	got [gɒt]	got [gɒt]	<i>получать</i>
give [gɪv]	gave [geɪv]	given ['gɪvən]	<i>давать</i>
go [gəʊ]	went [went]	gone [gɒn]	<i>идти, направляться</i>
grow [grəʊ]	grew [gru:]	grown [grəʊn]	<i>расти</i>
hang [hæŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	hung [hʌŋ]	<i>вешать</i>
have [hæv]	had [hæd]	had [hæd]	<i>иметь</i>
hear [hɪə]	heard [hɜ:d]	heard [hɜ:d]	<i>слышать</i>
keep [ki:p]	kept [kept]	kept [kept]	<i>держать, содержать</i>
know [nəʊ]	knew [nju:]	known [nəʊn]	<i>знать</i>
learn [lɜ:n]	learned/learnt [lɜ:nt]	learned/learnt [lɜ:nt]	<i>учить</i>
leave [li:v]	left [left]	left [left]	<i>уезжать, покидать, оставлять</i>
let [let]	let [let]	let [let]	<i>позволять, давать</i>
lie [laɪ]	lay [leɪ]	lain [leɪn]	<i>лежать</i>
lose [lu:z]	lost [lɒst]	lost [lɒst]	<i>терять</i>
make [meɪk]	made [meɪd]	made [meɪd]	<i>делать, изготавливать</i>
mean [mi:n]	meant [ment]	meant [ment]	<i>значить, иметь в виду</i>
meet [mi:t]	met [met]	met [met]	<i>встречать</i>
put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	put [pʊt]	<i>класть</i>
read [ri:d]	read [red]	read [red]	<i>читать</i>
ride [raɪd]	rode [rəʊd]	ridden [rɪdn]	<i>ездить (верхом на лошади, на велосипеде)</i>

ring [rɪŋ]	rang [ræŋ]	rung [rʌŋ]	<i>звонить</i>
run [rʌn]	ran [ræn]	run [rʌn]	<i>бегать</i>
say [seɪ]	said [sed]	said [sed]	<i>сказать</i>
see [si:]	saw [sɔ:]	seen [si:n]	<i>видеть</i>
send [send]	sent [sent]	sent [sent]	<i>посылать</i>
speak [spi:k]	spoke [spəʊk]	spoken [ˈspəʊkən]	<i>говорить</i>
spell [spel]	spelt [spelt]	spelt [spelt]	<i>произносить по буквам</i>
spend [spend]	spent [spent]	spent [spent]	<i>тратить (деньги); проводить (время)</i>
stand [stænd]	stood [stʊd]	stood [stʊd]	<i>стоять</i>
strike [straɪk]	struck [strʌk]	struck [strʌk]	<i>ударять, бить (о часах)</i>
swim [swɪm]	swam [swæm]	swum [swʌm]	<i>плавать</i>
take [teɪk]	took [tʊk]	taken [ˈteɪkən]	<i>брать</i>
teach [ti:tʃ]	taught [tɔ:t]	taught [tɔ:t]	<i>учить, обучать</i>
tell [tel]	told [təʊld]	told [təʊld]	<i>сказать, расска- зать</i>
think [θɪŋk]	thought [θɔ:t]	thought [θɔ:t]	<i>думать</i>
understand [ʌndə'stænd]	understood [ʌndə'stʊd]	understood [ʌndə'stʊd]	<i>понимать</i>
wear [weə]	wore [wɔ:]	worn [wɔ:n]	<i>носить, быть одетым</i>
win [wɪn]	won [wʌn]	won [wʌn]	<i>выигрывать</i>
write [raɪt]	wrote [rəʊt]	written [ˈrɪtn]	<i>писать</i>

Таблица перевода некоторых англо-американских единиц измерения в метрическую систему

286

Меры длины

1 дюйм (inch) = 2,54 см

1 фут (foot) = 30,48 см

Меры веса

1 унция (oz) = 28,35 г

1 фунт (pound) = 373,2 г

Меры объёма

1 галлон (gallon) = $\begin{cases} 4,546 \text{ л (Великобритания)} \\ 3,785 \text{ л (США)} \end{cases}$

1 пинта (pint) = $\begin{cases} 0,57 \text{ л (Великобритания)} \\ 0,47 \text{ л (США)} \end{cases}$

Unit 1. Visiting the USA

Step One	3
Step Two	12
Step Three	20
Step Four	28
Step Five	38

287

Unit 2. English — a Global Language

Step One	49
Step Two	58
Step Three	66
Step Four	75
Step Five	82

Unit 3. Living Things Around Us

Step One	91
Step Two	100
Step Three	107
Step Four	114
Step Five	123

Unit 4. The ABC of Ecology

Step One	132
Step Two	140
Step Three	150
Step Four	156
Step Five	162

Unit 5. Keeping Fit

Step One	170
Step Two	177
Step Three	186
Step Four	194
Step Five	202

Unit 6. Our Favourite Pastimes

Step One	214
Step Two	222
Step Three	233
Step Four	242
Step Five	253

288

Unit 1

Вопросы для самооценки	263
Англо-русский словарь	264
Таблица неправильных глаголов	283
Таблица перевода некоторых англо-американских единиц измерения в метрическую систему	286